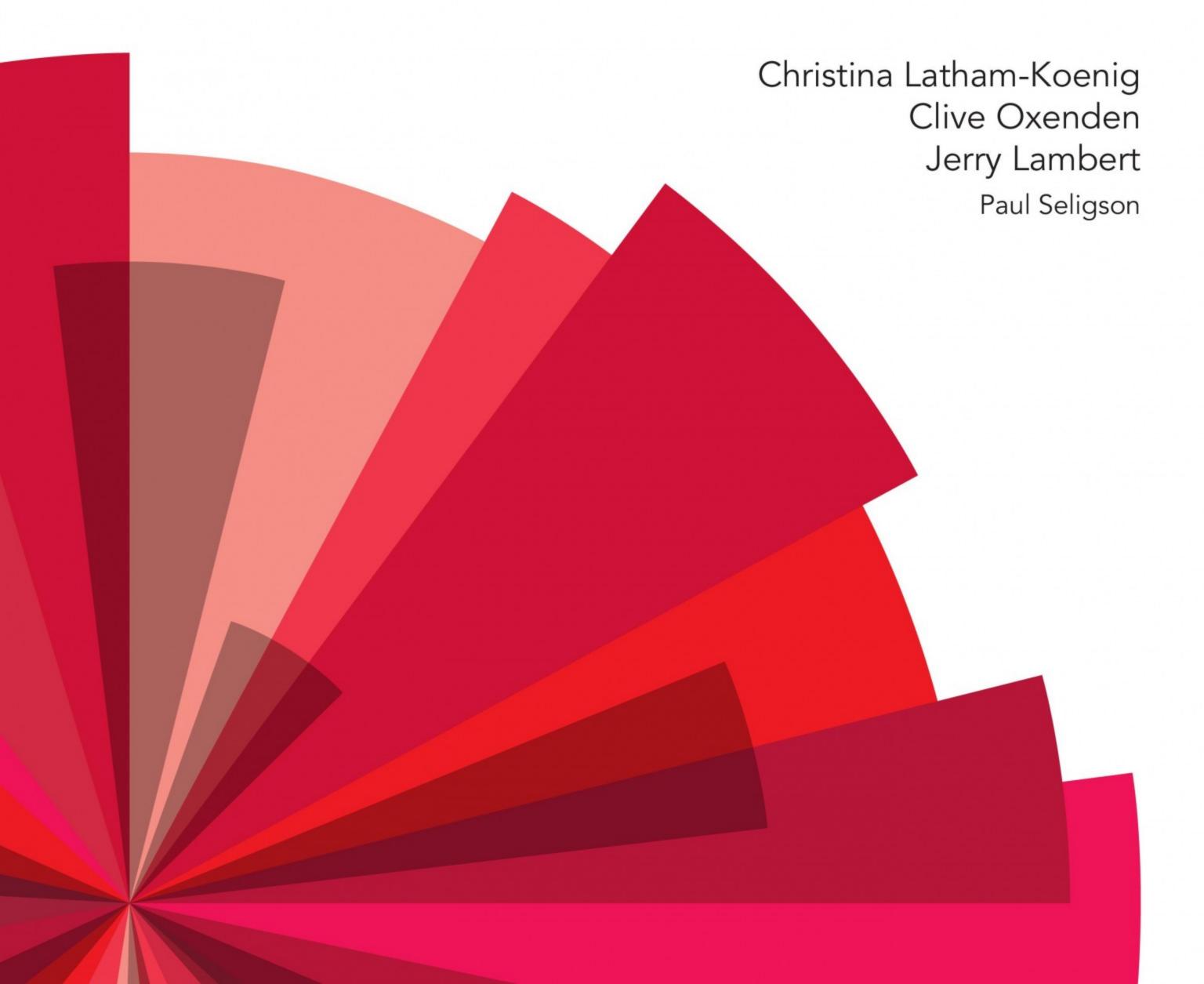
English File fourth edition English File E-book

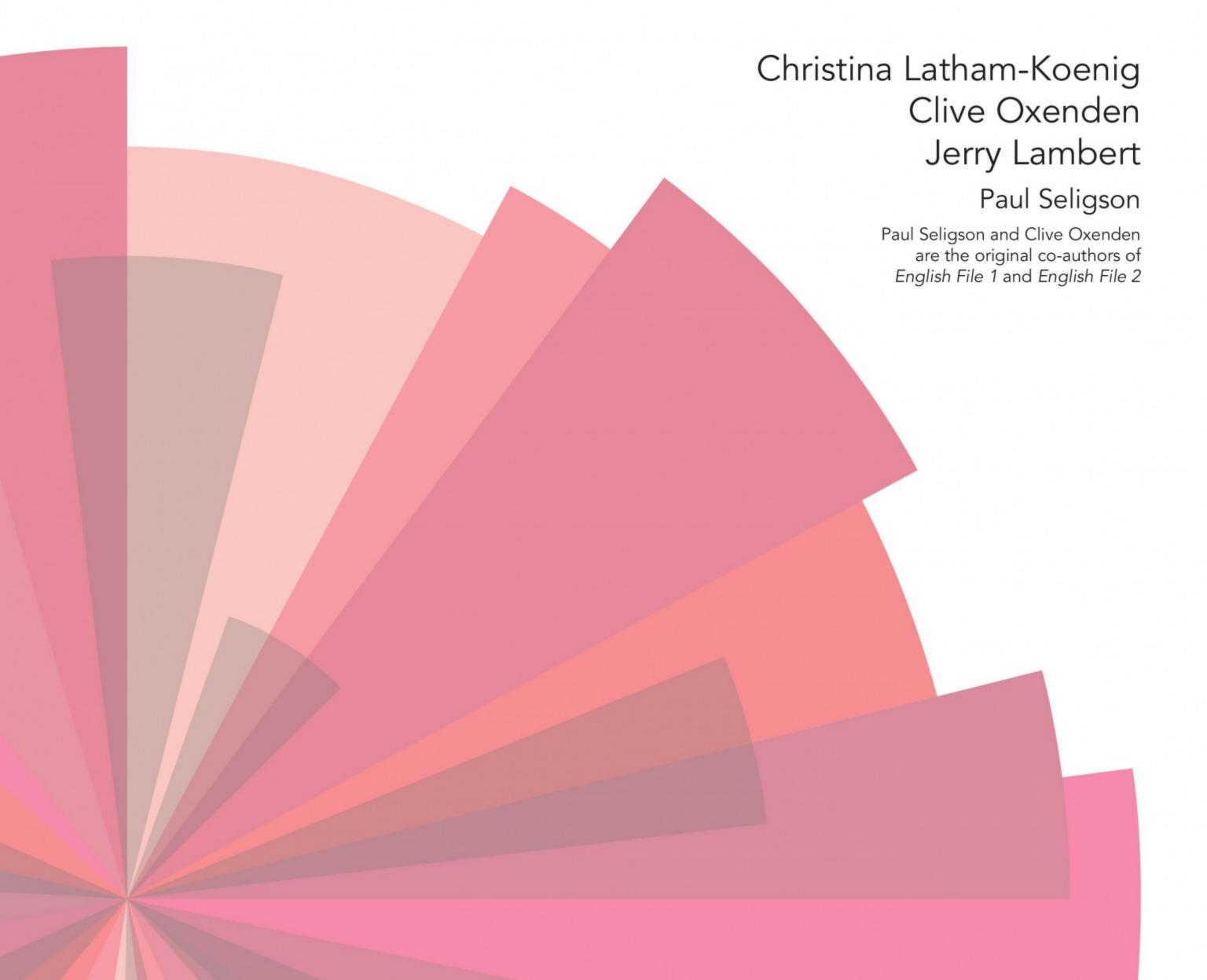


digi ZABAN





English File fourth edition Elementary e-book



Contents

		GRAMMAR	VOCABULARY	PRONUNCIATION
1				
6	A Welcome to the class	verb be +, subject pronouns: I, you, etc.	days of the week, numbers 0–20	vowel sounds, word stress
8	B One world	verb be - and ?	countries, numbers 21–100	/a/, consonant sounds /tʃ/, /ʃ/, /dʒ/, word stress
10	C What's your email?	possessive adjectives: my, your, etc.	classroom language	/əu/, /uː/, /ɑː/, the alphabet, sentence stress
12	Practical English Episode 1	checking in V in a hotel		
2				
14	A Are you tidy or untidy?	singular and plural nouns	things, in, on, under	final -s and -es
16	B Made in America	adjectives	colours, adjectives, modifiers: very / really, quite	long and short vowel sounds
18	C Slow down!	imperatives, let's	feelings	linking
20	Revise and Check 1&2			
-				
3				
22	A Britain: the good and the bad	present simple + and -	verb phrases: cook dinner, etc.	third person -s
24	B 9 to 5	present simple ?	jobs	/3ː/ and /ə/
26	C Love me, love my dog	word order in questions	question words	sentence stress
28	Practical English Episode 2	buying a coffee V telling t	he time	
4				
30	A Family photos	possessive 's, Whose?	family	/ʌ/, the letter o
32	B From morning to night	prepositions of time (at, in, on) and place (at, in, to)	daily routine	linking
34	C Blue Zones	position of adverbs, expressions of frequency	months, adverbs and expressions of frequency	the letter h
36	Revise and Check 3&4			
5				
38	A Vote for me!	can / can't	verb phrases: buy a newspaper, etc.	sentence stress
40	B A quiet life?	present continuous: be + verb + -ing	noise: verbs and verb phrases	/ŋ/
42	C A city for all seasons	present simple or present continuous?	the weather and seasons	places in London
44	Practical English Episode 3	buying clothes V clothes		
6				
46	A A North African story	object pronouns: me, you, him, etc.	words in a story	/aɪ/, /ɪ/, and /iː/
48	B The third Friday in June	like + (verb + -ing)	the date, ordinal numbers	/ð/ and /θ/, saying the date
50	C Making music	revision: be or do?	music	/j/, giving opinions
52	Revise and Check 5&6			

		GRAMMAR	VOCABULARY	PRONUNCIATION
7				The state of the s
54	A Selfies	past simple of be: was / were	word formation: write → writer	sentence stress
56	B Wrong name, wrong place	past simple: regular verbs	past time expressions	-ed endings
58	C Happy New Year?	past simple: irregular verbs	go, have, get	sentence stress
60	Practical English Episode 4	asking the way V directions		
8		in the second second		
62	A A murder mystery	past simple: regular and irregular	irregular verbs	past simple verbs
64	B A house with a history	there is / there are, some / any + plural nouns	the house	/eə/ and /ɪə/
66	C Room 333	there was / there were	prepositions: place and movement	silent letters
68	Revise and Check 7&8			
9				
70	A #mydinnerlastnight	countable / uncountable nouns, a / an, some / any	food and drink	the letters ea
72	B White gold	quantifiers: how much / how many, a lot of, etc.	food containers	linking, /ʃ/ and /s/
74	C Facts and figures	comparative adjectives	high numbers	/ə/, sentence stress
76	Practical English Episode 5	ordering a meal V understan	ding a menu	
10				
78	A The most dangerous place	superlative adjectives	places and buildings	consonant groups
80	B Five continents in a day	be going to (plans), future time expressions	city holidays	sentence stress
82	C The fortune teller	be going to (predictions)	verb phrases	word stress
84	Revise and Check 9&10			
11				
86	A Culture shock	adverbs (manner and modifiers)	common adverbs	connected speech
	B Experiences or things?	verb + to + infinitive	verbs that take the infinitive	weak to, sentence stress
90	C How smart is your phone?	definite article: the or no the	phones and the internet	the
92	Practical English Episode 6		ic transport	
12				
94	A I've seen it ten times!	present perfect	irregular past participles	sentence stress
96	B He's been everywhere!	present perfect or past simple?	learning irregular verbs	irregular past participles
98	C The English File interview	revision: question formation	Todaring irregular verbs	egular past participies
00	Revise and Check 11&12	TOVISION QUESTION TOTTIALION		
02	Communication	124 Grammar Bank	165 Irregular verbs	
13	Writing	148 Vocabulary Bank	166 Sound Bank	
18	Listening			

Course overview

English File

Welcome to **English File fourth edition**. This is
how to use the Student's
Book, Online Practice,
and the Workbook in and
out of class.



Student's Book

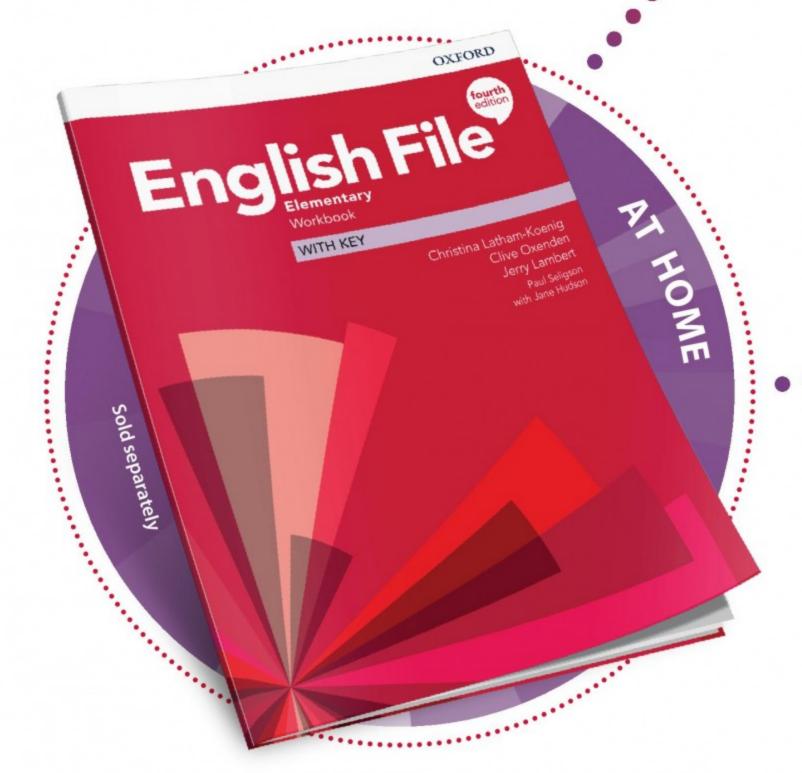
All the language and skills you need to improve your English, with Grammar, Vocabulary, Pronunciation, and skills work in every File. Also available as an eBook.

Use your Student's Book in class with your teacher.



Grammar, Vocabulary, and Pronunciation practice for every lesson.

Use your Workbook for homework or for self-study to practise language and to check your progress.





Go to
englishfileonline.com
and use the code on
your Access Card to
log into the Online
Practice.

LOOK AGAIN

- Review the language from every lesson.
- Watch the videos and listen to all the class audio as many times as you like.

PRACTICE

- Improve your skills with extra Reading,
 Writing, Listening and Speaking practice.
- Use the interactive video to practise Practical English.

CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

- Test yourself on the language from the File and get instant feedback.
 - Try an extra Challenge.

SOUND BANK

 Use the Sound Bank videos to practise and improve your pronunciation of English sounds.

Online Practice

Look again at Student's Book language you want to review or that you missed in class, do extra **Practice** activities, and **Check your progress** on what you've learnt so far.

Use the Online Practice to learn outside the classroom and get instant feedback on your progress.

Welcome to the class

Hi, I'm Matt. Sally. Nice What's your to meet you. name?

G verb be ±, subject pronouns: I, you, etc. V days of the week, numbers 0-20 P vowel sounds, word stress

LISTENING & SPEAKING

1.2 Look at the photo story and listen to the conversations. Match the names to people A-D.

Ben Carla Matt Sally

- Listen again and complete the gaps.
 - 1 Teacher Hello, everybody. Welcome to the class. I'm Carla. I'm your teacher.

2	Matt	Hi, I'm Matt. What's your ¹ name ?
	Sally	Sally.
	Matt	2?
	Sally	Sally!

- 3 Matt What's your phone 3_____? **Sally** It's 07894 132 456.
- Ben ⁴_____, Matt.
 - Matt Hello. This is Sally. She's in my salsa class.
 - Nice to meet you. My name's Ben.
 - Nice to 5_____ you, too. Sally
 - Bye, Sally. Matt
 - Goodbye, Matt. Bye, Ben. Sally
- Hi, Sally. 5 Ben
 - Sally Ben! Are you in the salsa class, too?
 - Yes, I am. How are 6_____?
 - Sally I'm very well, 7_ _____ you. And you?
 - _, thanks. ... Great! You're my
 - partner!
 - Yes! See you later, Matt. Sally
- 1.3 Listen and repeat the conversations. Copy the rhythm.
- Complete the gaps with a word from the list.

Вуе	Fine	Hi	l'm	Thanks	
Hello	o = <u>Hi</u>			Thank you =	
My n	ame's.	=		Goodbye =	
Very	well =				

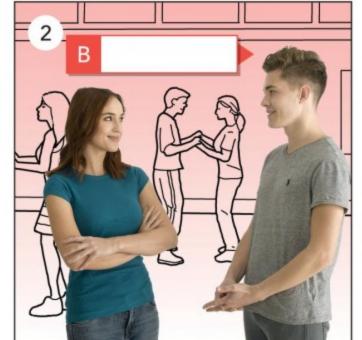
Introduce yourself to other students.

Hello, I'm Antonio. What's your name?)

(Mia. Nice to meet you.

Nice to meet you, too.)











2 GRAMMAR verb be ±, subject pronouns

- a Complete the sentences with 'm, 's, or 're.
 - 1 I am Carla. = I'm Carla.
 - 2 | am Matt. = |___ Matt.
 - 3 My name is Ben. = My name____ Ben.
 - 4 You are my partner. = You____ my partner.
 - 5 She is in my salsa class. = She____ in my salsa class.

b @p.124 Grammar Bank 1A

- c 1.5 Listen and repeat the pronouns and contractions.
 - 1)) I, I'm (I, I'm
- d 1.6 Listen. Say the contraction.
 - 1)) I am (I'm
- e In pairs, try to remember the names in your class. Say He's / She's ______.
- f Stand up and speak to other students.

Hi, Mia. How are you? \(\int I'm fine, thanks. And you?\)

3 PRONUNCIATION vowel sounds, word stress

Vowel sounds

In English, vowels (a, e, i, o, and u) and combinations of vowels (e.g. ea, ai) can be pronounced in different ways. Sometimes they are short sounds (e.g. it, well), but sometimes they are long sounds (e.g. e = he) or diphthongs (e.g. e = hi).

a 1.7 Listen to the words and sounds. Then listen and repeat.

	(*)		e	PEI	
fish	tree	cat	egg	tr <mark>ai</mark> n	bike
it this in	he we meet	am thanks Sally	very well welcome	they name later	Hi I Bye

b 1.8 Listen and write the words.

Word stress

Multi-syllable words have one stressed syllable. good|<u>bye</u> <u>so</u>|rry <u>wel</u>|come

c 1.9 Listen and under<u>line</u> the stressed syllable in these words.

air|port com|pu|ter e|mail ho|tel in|ter|net mu|se|um pas|ta pi|zza sa|lad sand|wich u|ni|ver|si|ty web|site

d Write the words from c in the chart.

% food	★ technology	⊞ places
		airport

- e In pairs, write more words that you know in each column. How do you pronounce them?
- **4 VOCABULARY** days of the week, numbers 0–20

a 1.10 Look at the picture. Listen and complete the gaps.



- b **V**p.148 **Vocabulary Bank** Days and numbers Do Parts 1 and 2.
- c 1.14 Listen and say the next day or number.
 -) Monday Tuesday (Wednesday
- d Ask three students What's your phone number?

5 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a 1.15 Listen. Where are they? Write 1-6 in the boxes.

	airport	Gate numb	er
1	sandwich bar		pounds
	hotel	Room	
	museum	Closed on	
	taxi		Manchester Road
	language	Classes on	
	school	and	mornings

- **b** Listen again. Write a number or a day in each gap.
- c **1.16** Listen and respond.
 - 1)) Hello. Nice to meet you. (Nice to meet you, too.
 - 2)) What day is it today? (It's...

One world

Where are you from?

I'm from Verona in Italy.

G verb be ☐ and ? V countries, numbers 21–100 P /ə/, consonant sounds /tʃ/, /ʃ/, /dʒ/, word stress

VOCABULARY countries

- 1.17 Listen and match the music to the countries.
 - Brazil Mexico Russia Scotland



Vp.149 Vocabulary Bank Countries

In groups, do The World Quiz. Answer with a continent, country, or nationality from Vocabulary Bank Countries.

I think it's Asia. \(\(\) I think it's Europe, but I'm not sure.

PRONUNCIATION /a/, /tʃ/, /ʃ/, /dʒ/

O The /ə/ sound

The /ə/ sound is the most common vowel sound in English. The /ə/ sound has many different spellings, e.g. <u>pa</u>sta, <u>Sa</u>turday, <u>Bri</u>tain.

1.20 Listen to the words and sounds. Then listen and repeat.



computer

American Brazilian Scotland Switzerland

Consonant sounds

Many consonants (e.g. j) and combinations of consonants (e.g. sh) only have one pronunciation (e.g. Japan / jazz, she / English). Some consonants can be pronounced in different ways (e.g. g can be /g/ Hungary or /dʒ/ German).

1.21 Listen to the words, sounds, and sentences. Then listen and repeat. Practise with a partner.

	chess	Charles isn't Czech, he's French.
J. J.	shower	Is she Polish or Russian?
d3	jazz	We're German and they're Japanese.

- 1.22 Listen. Say the nationality.
 - 1)) Scotland (Scottish



3 GRAMMAR verb be - and ?

a ①1.23 Read and listen to three interviews at the Olympics. Complete the gaps with a country or a nationality.





b Read the interviews again and complete the chart.

+	l'm	you're	it's
		you aren't	
?			

- c **G**p.124 **Grammar Bank 1B**
- d 1.25 Listen and respond with a short answer.
 - 1)) Is Sydney the capital of Australia? (No, it isn't.
- e With a partner, write three questions beginning Is...? or Are...? Ask them to another pair.

Are you from Italy? \(\text{No, we aren't.} \)

4 SPEAKING

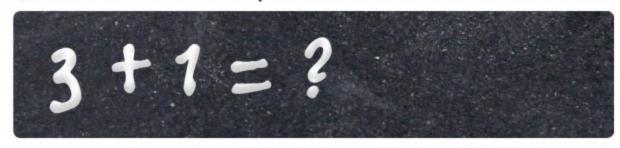
a @Communication Where are they from? A p.102 B p.108 Ask and answer about people from different countries.

Where's Masako from?)

(She's from Japan.

Where in Japan?)

- b Imagine you're from a different country. Choose from Vocabulary Bank Countries p.149 and think of a city. Ask other students Where are you from?
- 5 VOCABULARY numbers 21–100
- a 1.26 Answer the questions with numbers 1–20.



- b Vp.148 Vocabulary Bank Days and numbers Do Part 3.
- c 1.28 Listen and write the numbers.
- **d** Write ten numbers from 21–100. Dictate them to a partner.

6 PRONUNCIATION & LISTENING word stress

a 1.29 Listen and repeat the pairs of numbers. How is the stress different?

1 a 13 b 30 2 a 14 b 40 3 a 15 b 50 4 a 16 b 60 5 a 17 b 70 6 a 18 b 80 7 a 19 b 90

- b 1.30 Listen to the conversations. Which number do you hear? Circle a or b above.
- c Play Bingo.

What's your email?

V-A-Z-Q-U-E-Z. How do you spell your surname?

G possessive adjectives: my, your, etc.

V classroom language P /əʊ/, /uː/, /ɑː/, the alphabet, sentence stress

VOCABULARY classroom language

- Match the words and pictures.
 - a board /boid/
 - a chair /tʃeə/
 - a computer /kəm'pjurtə/
 - a desk /desk/
 - 1 a door /dox/
 - a picture /'pɪktʃə/
 - a table /'teɪbl/
 - a wall /worl/
 - a window /'windəu/
- 1.31 Listen and check.
- With a partner, ask about things in your classroom.



- Match sentences 1–3 to A–C in the picture.
 - What page is it?
 - Sorry I'm late.
 - Look at the board, please.
- 1.32 Listen and check.
- Vp.150 Vocabulary Bank Classroom language
- 1.35 Listen and follow the instructions.

PRONUNCIATION

/əʊ/, /uː/, /ɑː/, the alphabet

1.36 Listen to the words and sounds. Then listen and repeat.

	phone	close go Poland
uff	boot	school do two
	car	class answer France

1.37 Listen and repeat the alphabet.

What's this?

What's that?

ABC DEF GHI JKL MNO PQR STU VWX YZ

1.38 Complete the alphabet chart with C, D, K, N, O, S, U, and V. Listen and check.

TEI		e			uff	
tr <mark>ai</mark> n	tree	egg	bike	phone	boot	car
Α	В	F	1		Q	R
Н	_	L	Υ			
J	_	M			W	
_	Е	_				
	G	_				
	Р	X Z				
	Т	Z				
	_					

1.39 Listen to the groups of letters.

1 EAI 3 K Q 5 VPB 7 V W 2 G J 4 CS 6 MN 8 YU

- 1.40 Listen and circle the letter you hear.
- Practise saying the phrases below. Use abbreviations.

the United Kingdom the European Union World Wide Web

a Personal Computer a Very Important Person the United States of America a Portable Document Format

the National Basketball Association

LISTENING & SPEAKING

1.41 Micaela is a student of English. Listen to her Skype interview with Mark, a teacher at a language school in England. Complete her form.

English House Language School Student information First name Micaela **Email address**

Surname	1
Age	2
Country	3
City	4
Address	Florida ⁵

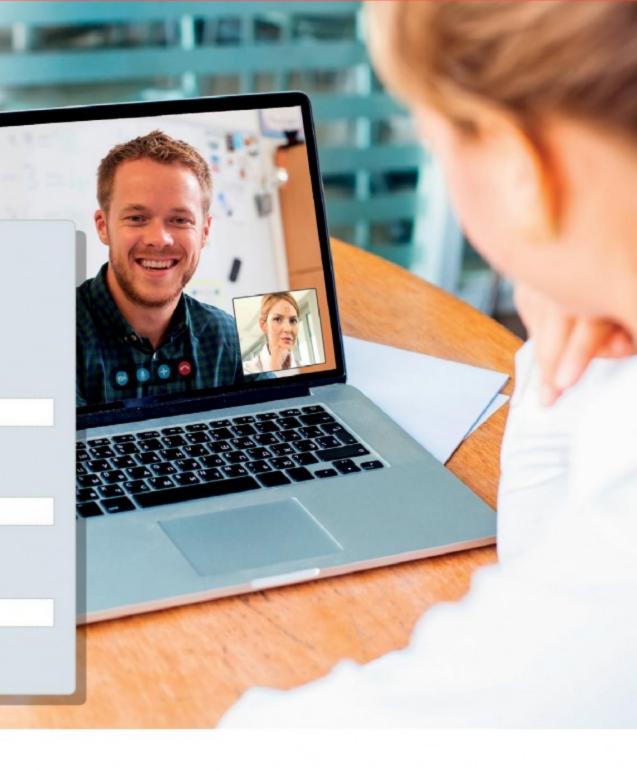
Postcode

m.vazquez@mail.com Phone (mobile)

ZABAN

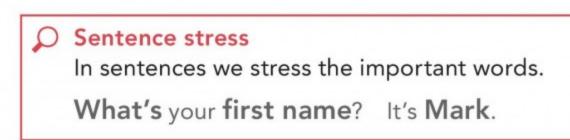
Phone (landline)

854-

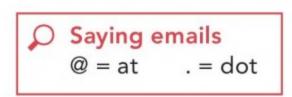


1.42 Listen. Complete Mark's questions to Micaela.

1	What's your first name?
2	your surname?
3	do you spell it?
4	old are you?
5	Where are you?
6	your address?
7	your postcode?
8	What's your address
	What's your phone?



- Listen again and repeat the questions. Copy the rhythm.
- Ask your partner the questions. Write their answers.



GRAMMAR possessive adjectives

Complete the questions with I, you, my, or your.

Where are	1	from?
2	_'m from	Buenos Aires.
What's 3		name?
4	_ name's	Micaela.

- c 1.44 Listen. Change the sentences.

 - 1)) I'm Matt. (My name's Matt.
 2)) You're Sally. (Your name's Sally.
- 1.45 Look at the photos. Are they their real names? Listen and check.



Communication What's his / her real name? A p.102 B p.108 Complete information about some actors and singers.

WRITING

W p.113 **Writing** Completing a form Complete an application for a visa and write a paragraph about you.

Practical English Arriving in London

checking in

V in a hotel

etc.) floor /graund flox/

VOCABULARY in a hotel

Match the words and symbols.



- 1.46 Watch or listen and check.
- Cover the words and look at the symbols. Say the words.

INTRODUCTION

/'singl ru:m/



- 1.47 Watch or listen to Jenny and Rob. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
 - 1 Rob lives and works in London.
 - 2 He's a writer for a magazine.
 - 3 The name of his magazine is London 20seven.
 - 4 Jenny is British.
 - 5 She's an assistant editor.
 - 6 It's her second time in the UK.
- Watch or listen again. Say why the **F** sentences are false.

CHECKING IN



- 1.48 Watch or listen to Jenny checking into a hotel. Answer the questions.
 - 1 Complete Jenny's surname: ZI__LI__SK__.
 - 2 What's her room number? _____
- Watch or listen again. Complete the You hear phrases.

You hear	You say
Good evening, madam.	Hello. I have a reservation. My name's Jennifer Zielinski.
Can you ¹ that, please?	Z-I-E-L-I-N-S-K-I.
For five nights?	Yes, that's right.
Can I have your passport, please?	Just a second Here you are.
Thank you. Can you sign here, 2 ? Thank you. Here's your 3 It's	The lift? Oh the
room 306, on the third floor. The 4 is over there.	The lift? Oh, the elevator.
Yes. Enjoy your stay, Ms Zielinski.	Thank you.

British and American English

lift = British English elevator = American English z = /zed/ British English /ziz/ American English

Greetings

Good \underline{mor} ning = > 12.00 $Good\ after\underline{noon} = 12.00 > 18.00$ Good evening = 18.00 >

Goodnight = Goodbye (when you go to bed) madam = a polite way to greet a woman sir = a polite way to greet a man

- c 1.49 Watch or listen and repeat the You say phrases. Copy the rhythm.
- d Practise the conversation with a partner.
- e Work in pairs. Read your role and look at the conversation in **3b**. What do you need to change?
 - **A** (book open) You are the receptionist. It's 11.00 a.m.
 - **B**'s room is 207 on the second floor. Begin Good morning, sir / madam.
 - **B** (book closed) You arrive at the hotel. Use your first name and surname.
- f Role-play the conversation. Then change roles.
- g 01.50 Read the information box. Watch or listen and repeat the phrases.

Q	Can you? = Please do it.	Can I have? = Please give me (my passport, etc.).
	Can you spell that? Can you sign here?	Can I have my key, please? Can I have your passport, please?

- h You are in a hotel. Ask the receptionist to give you...
 - your key your passport
 - a map of London a pen

4 D JENNY TALKS TO ROB



- a ①1.51 Watch or listen. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
 - 1 Jenny has a coffee.
 - 2 She is in London on business.
 - 3 The waitress is German.
 - 4 Jenny phones Rob Walker.
 - 5 Jenny is tired.
 - 6 Their meeting is at 10.00.
- **b** Watch or listen again. Say why the **F** sentences are false.

c 1.52 Read the information box. Watch or listen and repeat the phrases and responses.

Would you like a coffee? Yes, please. Would you like another tea? No, thanks.

We use Would you like...? to offer somebody something. We respond Yes, please. or No, thanks.

- d With a partner, practise offering and responding with the drinks below.
 - beer coffee Coke hot chocolate
 - mineral water tea
- e Look at the Social English phrases. Who says them: Jenny, Rob, or the waitress?

Social English

- 1 I'm here on business.
- 2 I'm from New York. What about you?
- 3 No problem.
- 4 This is Rob. Rob Walker.
- 5 That's perfect.
- 6 It's time for bed.



- f ①1.53 Watch or listen and check. Then watch or listen and repeat the phrases.
- g Complete conversations A–F with Social English phrases 1–6. Practise with a partner.

Α	Hi. Is that Jennifer? 4	Hello, Rob.
В	Oh look! It's 11.30!	Goodnight.
С	Hi. Are you here on holiday?	No,
D		I'm from London.
E	Can I have a coffee, please?	Sure.
F	Here's your coffee. Milk and sugar are on the table.	Thanks.

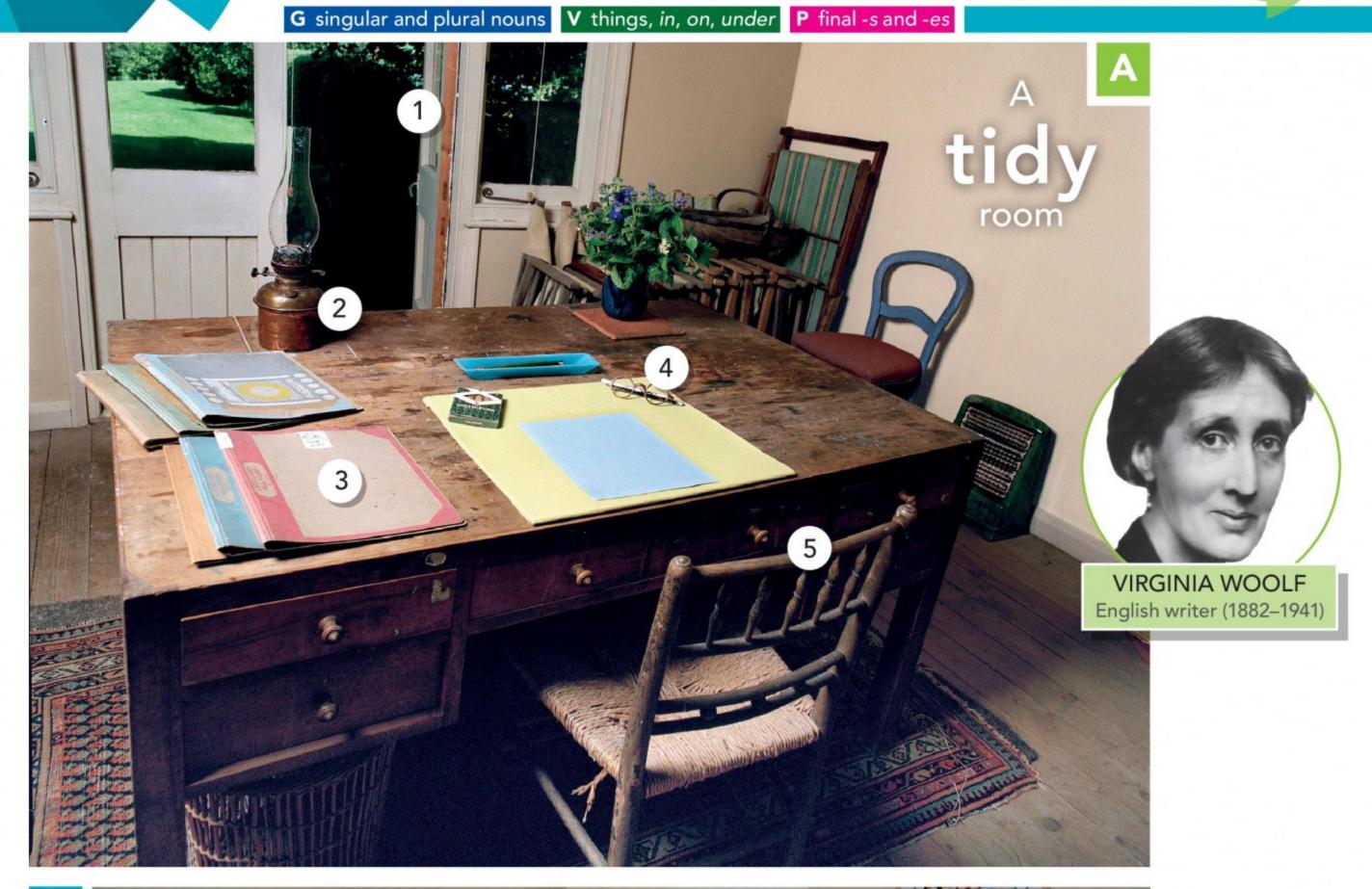
CAN YOU...?

- check into a hotel and spell your name
- ask somebody to do something / to give you something
- offer somebody a drink, and accept or refuse

2A

Are you tidy or untidy?





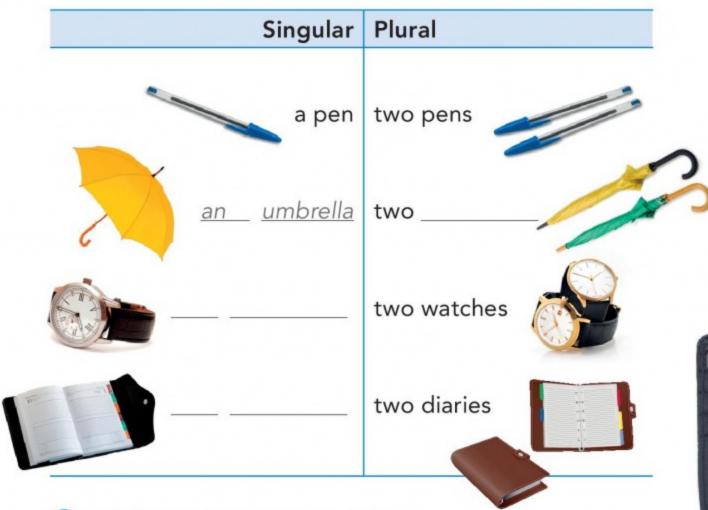


1 VOCABULARY things

- a Look at the photos of the two rooms. Are you tidy or untidy?
- b With a partner, can you name 1–10 in the two photos?
- c Vp.151 Vocabulary Bank Things

2 GRAMMAR singular and plural nouns

a Complete the chart. Why is it a pen but an umbrella?



b **G**p.126 Grammar Bank 2A

3 PRONUNCIATION final -s and -es

a ①2.3 Listen to the words and sounds. Then listen and repeat.

S	snake	books lamps tickets
	zebra	keys pens photos
/IZ/		glasses purses watches

Final -s or -es

Final -s or -es after nouns ending in ce, ch, ge, se, sh, ss and x = /IZ/, e.g. glasses, purses, watches.

b ②2.4 Read the rule. Circle the words where -es is pronounced /1z/. Listen and check.

1 classes

4 boxes

7 pages

2 files

5 pieces

8 phones

3 headphones

6 tissues

c Look at the photos of the two rooms again. What plural things can you see?

4 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING

in, on, under

a Look at the photos. Complete the sentences with in, on, or under.

The glasses are _____ the notebook.
 The credit cards are _____ the wallet.

3 The bag is _____ the desk.







b Communication in, on, under A p.103 B p.108 Where are the things?

5 LISTENING

a ①2.5 Listen to three people. Number the places they talk about (1–3) in the chart.

in her bag		
on his desk	a computer,	
in her study		

- b Listen again. Write what things the people have in each place.
- c Talk to a partner about your bag, desk, or study. Say what things you have. Is your desk or study tidy or untidy?

(In my bag I have a purse, keys, my phone...

Made in America

Are taxis cheap in New York? No, they're really expensive.

G adjectives V colours, adjectives, modifiers: very / really, quite P long and short vowel sounds

VOCABULARY colours, adjectives

What colour is the American flag? Complete the words with vowels.



2.6 Complete the colours. Listen and check.

bl_ck	y_II_w	gry	rng	br_wn
			s_lv_r	

With a partner, practise colours with things in the classroom or in your bag.

What colour is my purse? (It's red. What colour is that?) (It's black.

Vp.152 Vocabulary Bank Adjectives

2 GRAMMAR adjectives

Look at the American icons. What are they? Label the photos using an adjective and a noun from each circle.

Adjectives

American New French yellow blue hot fast White

Nouns

House jeans football food fries York taxis dog

- Circle the correct word or phrase.
 - 1 Can I have a hot dog / dog hot, please?
 - 2 In New York the taxis are yellows / yellow.
- G p.126 Grammar Bank 2B
- Close your books. Can you remember the eight American icons?



digi ZABAN

3 PRONUNCIATION

long and short vowel sounds

fish	tree	cat	car
"G" h			uf
clock	horse	bull	boot

- **b** ②2.10 Listen and write two adjectives for each sound in the chart.
- c In pairs, make phrases with an adjective and a noun with the same vowel sound. Use a / an with singular nouns.

Adjectives big black cheap dark good grey new old short

Nouns bag book boots city day glasses jeans photo story

a big city

d <a>2.11 Listen and check. Practise saying the phrases.



4 SPEAKING

a Tell a partner about eight things you have. Use an adjective or a colour.

(I have a new phone. I have a red car...

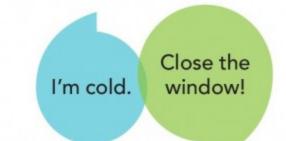
b Communication The same or different? **A** p.103 **B** p.109 Describe your pictures to a partner. Find the differences.

5 READING

British and American English - the same, but different

British and American people speak the same language, English, but with some small differences.

- 1 <u>Vocabulary</u> Some words are different in American English, for example, they say *ZIP code*, not *postcode*; *vacation*, not *holiday*; and *cell phone*, not *mobile phone*. Some words have different meanings, for example, in British English a *purse* is a thing where women have their money and credit cards. In American English a *purse* is a woman's bag.
- 2 _____ Colour, favour, and other words that end in -our in British English end in -or in American English. Centre, theatre, and other words that end in -tre in British English end in -ter in American English.
- There are some small differences, especially prepositions. For example, Americans say *See you Friday*, but British people say *See you on Friday*.
- 4 _____ This is the really important difference between American and British English. American accents and British accents are very different. When an American starts speaking, British people know he or she is American, and vice versa.
- a Read the article once. Complete it with the headings.
 Grammar Pronunciation Spelling Vocabulary
- b ①2.12 Listen and read the article again. Check your answers to a.
- c Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
 - 1 American English and British English are very different.
 - 2 Holiday and postcode are the same in British and American English.
 - 3 Purse has a different meaning in American and British English.
 - 4 Kilometer is the British spelling.
 - 5 British and American grammar are not very different.
 - 6 It's difficult to know if a person is English or American from their accent.
- d Do you know any more words which are American English, not British English?



G imperatives, let's V feelings P linking

VOCABULARY feelings

Match the words and pictures.



2.13 Listen and check. Repeat the phrases.

Collocation Use be + hungry, thirsty, hot, etc., e.g. I'm hungry. **NOT** I have hungry.

How do you feel? Make true sentences and tell your partner.

(I'm quite hungry. I'm very tired.

LISTENING & READING

1 2.14 Lisa and John are on holiday in Scotland with their baby, Alfie. Listen and look at the pictures. How does each person feel?

Picture 1 Lisa angry Picture 3 Lisa, John Picture 2 John, Alfie Picture 4 Lisa, Alfie

- **b** Listen again and read the story. Check your answers to a.
- 2.15 Listen to the end of the story. Is it a happy ending?









3 GRAMMAR imperatives, let's

Look at the highlighted phrases in the story. Then complete the chart.

Imperatives			
+ Turn	_ right. _ for a hotel. _ turn left! _ worry.	careful! drive fast!	
Suggestions			
+ - Let's	_ stop at a café. stop.	go there.	

Gp.126 Grammar Bank 2C

1 Satnav After 100 metres turn right. Turn right.

Lisa Don't turn left! Turn right!

John It's left, I'm sure.
Lisa No, it isn't.
John Yes, it is!

Lisa No, it isn't! This is wrong!

John Oh no...

2 John I'm thirsty. Where's the water?

Lisa Sorry, it's empty.

John Empty?

Lisa Yes, empty. Let's stop at a café.

Alfie's hungry.

John OK.

3 John What's the matter?

Lisa I'm cold. Can you close your window?

John Cold? It's hot!

Lisa I'm cold. And Alfie's cold.

John OK.

Lisa Please don't drive fast! This road's really

dangerous.

John Don't worry. I'm a good driver.

Lisa Be careful!

4 Lisa Let's look for a hotel.

John No, let's not stop now.

Lisa But I'm tired and it's dark. And Alfie's

tired, too.

John OK, OK. Look for a hotel near here.

Lisa The Highland Hotel's 20 miles from here.

Let's go there.

John 20 miles? No problem.

c What do signs 1–9 mean? Make ± or ≡ imperatives with the verb phrases.

be careful cross the road now eat or drink here go in here listen to music here smoke here take photos turn left turn off your phone

- 1 Turn left.
- 2 Don't smoke here.



d Cover the verb phrases and look at the signs. Can you remember the phrases?





Communication What's the matter? A p.103 B p.109 Role-play conversations.

What's the matter?) (I'm sad.

5 PRONUNCIATION linking

Connected speech

When people speak they don't separate all the words. Often, if a word ends with a consonant and the next word begins with a vowel, they link them together, e.g. *Good_idea*.

- a **102.17** Listen and write six sentences.
- **b** Practise saying the sentences.

VIDEO LISTENING

a Watch the programme Have a safe journey! Complete the ten tips.

1 <u>Plan</u> your journey.

2 Check your ______.

3 Listen to _____ information on the radio.

4 Take a _____ with you in the car.

5 Take bottles of ___

6 Take books, games, and

with you.

7 _____ that all the passengers in the car have their seat belt on.

8 Check that you have _____.

9 After driving for two hours, stop for _____ minutes.

10 Don't use your _____.

Watch again. With a partner, agree your top three tips.



2 Revise and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle	a, b, or c.
1	Hello your name?
	a What b What are c What's
2	Maria is German a student.
	a She's b He's c It's
3	A Where from? B He's from Turkey.
	a he is b is c is he
4	They English, they're Scottish.
	a isn't b aren't c not are
5	A Are you from Paris? B Yes,
	alam bl'm clare
6	She's Brazilian name's Daniela.
	a His b Her c Your
7	We're from the USA surname is Mackay.
	a Your b Their c Our
8	A What are they? B They're
_	a watches b a watch c watchs
9	A What is it? B It's
4.0	a a umbrella b an umbrella c umbrella
10	lt's an
11	a animal ugly b ugly animal c beautiful animal
11	I have a
12	a bag very big b very bag big c very big bag
12	They're very a difficult exercises b exercises difficult
	c difficults exercises
13	careful! That dog's dangerous.
10	a Have b Be you c Be
14	Please in the library.
	a not eat b don't eat c no eat
15	I'm hungry stop at the café.
	a Let's b Let c Don't

VOCABULARY

a Complete with at, from, in, off, or to.

1	l'm	Japan.	
2	Nice	meet you.	
3	What's bonjour		English?
4	Look	the board	
5	Please turn	VOU	r phone.

b Complete the phrases with these verbs.

Answer	Open	Read	Stand	Work	
1	th	e text.	4		the door.
2	in	pairs.	5		_ the
3	ир			questions.	

c Circle the word that is different.

one (book) six three

- 1 eight file seven two
- 2 Brazil Chinese Hungary Switzerland
- 3 France Italian Japanese Polish
- 4 Africa Asia Europe Ireland
- 5 sixteen forty eighty ninety
- 6 Friday Italy Monday Wednesday
- 7 glasses headphones purse scissors
- 8 door school window wall
- 9 book magazine newspaper wallet
- 10 angry happy stressed tired
- **d** Write the opposite adjective.

1	good	
2	expensive	
3	dirty	
4	high	
5	left	

PRONUNCIATION

a Practise the words and sounds.

Vowel sounds



fish



tree





cat

car

Consonant sounds









snake

zebra

shower

jazz

- b Pp.166–7 Sound Bank Say more words for each sound.
- c What sound do the pink letters have in these words?

1 email 2 fast 3 page 4 sit 5 tissues

- d Underline the stressed syllable.
 - 1 a|ddress 3 ex|pen|sive 5 thir|teen 2 I|ta|ly 4 sun|gla|sses



CAN YOU understand this text?

- a Read the article once. What kind of people is it for?
- Read the article again. Mark the sentences
 T (true) or F (false).
 - 1 The Rockefeller Center is quite expensive.
 - 2 It's a good place to take photos.
 - 3 A lot of people stand and wait to get tickets for the Statue of Liberty.
 - 4 It's a good idea to drive in New York City.
 - 5 It's easy to walk to Coney Island from New York.
 - 6 Good Enough to Eat is open from morning to night.

CAN YOU understand these people?

2.18 Watch or listen and answer the questions.









c very tidy

1	Her name is				
	a Malini	b	Mallini	С	Malinni
2	Olga is from				
	a Mexico	b	Monaco	С	Moscow
3	Her name is				
	a Mary	b	Marie	С	Mairi
	She's				
	a Scottish	b	English	С	Irish
4	Jake is				

b tidy

CAN YOU say this in English?

Do the tasks with a partner. Tick (\checkmark) the box if you can do these things.

Can you...?

1 count from 0–20

a very untidy

- 2 count from 20–100 (20, 30, etc.)
- 3 say the days of the week
- 4 give three instructions, two 🛨 and one 🖃
- 5 introduce yourself and another person
- 6 answer the questions below
 - What's your first name / surname?
 - How do you spell it?
 - Where are you from?



Buy your tickets for the Statue of Liberty online

The Statue of Liberty is an American icon, but there are always long queues for tickets. Buy them on the internet before you go.

Explore the city on foot

Don't rent a car in New York City. The best thing is to walk – but good shoes are very important! Slow down and listen to the city. Sit on the grass in Central Park on a sunny day. But if you are tired, take a bus or the subway!



Visit Coney Island

Go to Coney Island beach by subway (an hour) and have a delicious New York hot dog. If it's hot, go for a swim in the Atlantic!



Have a meal at Good Enough to Eat

Good Enough to Eat on 83rd Street is a great traditional American restaurant serving breakfast, lunch, and dinner. It has salads, sandwiches, steak, and more.

Britain: the good and the bad lt rains a lot here.

Yes, but it doesn't rain every day.

G present simple + and -

V verb phrases: cook dinner, etc. P third person -s

VOCABULARY verb phrases

- 3.1 Listen and match the sounds and verb phrases.
 - drink mineral water
- like animals
- watch TV

- play the guitar
- speak German
- V p.153 Vocabulary Bank Verb phrases
- 3.3 Listen. Say the phrases.
 - 1)) TV (watch TV

GRAMMAR present simple ⊕ and ⊡

Read the article below. Complete the things Carola likes (1–8) with a word or phrase from the list.

gardens Indian food multiculturalism pubs the BBC the freedom the language the weather

- 3.4 Listen and check.
- Answer the questions with a partner.
 - 1 Look at the highlighted phrases. How are the verbs different in phrases 7 and 8? Why?
 - 2 Find the negative forms in the article and complete the chart. How are they different? Why?

+	□	
I have		
It rains		

PRONUNCIATION third person -s

Final -s or -es

The pronunciation rules for verbs ending in -s and -es are the same as for plural nouns.

How do you pronounce these plural nouns?

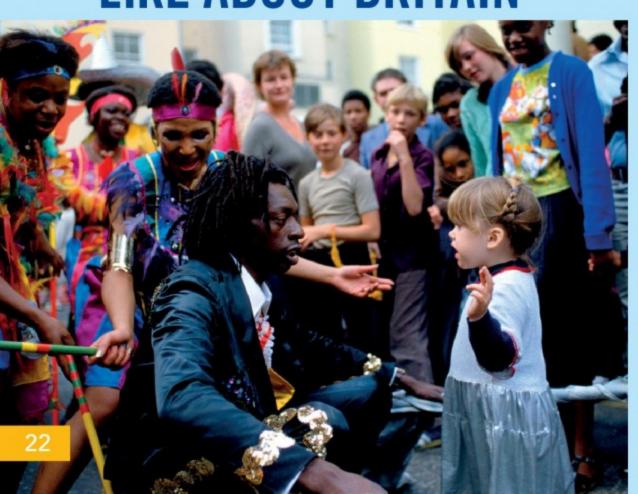
books keys watches

- 3.6 Listen to the sounds and sentences. Then listen and repeat.
 - /s/ She speaks Arabic. He drinks a lot of coffee. She cooks every day.
 - /z/ It rains a lot. He has a cat. She does exercise. He goes out on Friday night.
 - /IZ/ He watches American programmes. The film finishes in a minute. The bar closes at eleven.
- 3.7 Listen. Change the sentences.
 - 1)) I live in a flat. She. (She lives in a flat.

My name's Carola. I'm a journalist. I like...

Gp.128 **Grammar Bank 3A**

WHAT THE BRITISH LIKE ABOUT BRITAIN



- 1 multiculturalism. People from all over the world live in the UK, and they live together happily. Usually.
- . English is international. I speak English. You speak English. I don't have communication problems.
 - ______. My garden's small, but I have flowers and vegetables in it. When the sun's out I sit in the garden and I feel really happy.
- _____. I wear what I want. I say what I want. I do what I want.
- _____. I listen to the radio in the morning and I watch TV in the evening. A lot of programmes are interesting, funny, or educational. Sometimes all three.
- _____. We drink there, and we eat there, too the food now is very good.
- _____. It's cold, but not very cold. It's hot, but not very hot. It rains, but it doesn't rain every day.
- _____. My boyfriend cooks fantastic curries, and the UK is great for Indian restaurants!

digi ZABAN

I play tennis. I don't wear glasses...

 Change partners. Tell your new partner the six things about your old partner.

(Eva plays tennis. She doesn't wear glasses...

4 READING

- a Read the article on the right. Write ✓ if the person is positive about the UK, ✗ if he or she is negative, and ✓✗ if he or she is positive and negative. Give reasons for your answers.
- b Read the article again. Complete the sentences with a name.

1	likes the w	eather.
2	and	don't like the weather.
3	loves the f	ood.
4	and	don't like the food.
5	and	think British people are friendly.
6	thinks Briti	ish women live in a different way from
her c	ountry.	
7	doesn't th	ink British people work hard.
		m the article. Match them to their ou think everywhere means?
ever	vbodv /'evribodi/	

	everything /'evriθιη/			
I	all things	2	all people	

5 SPEAKING

C

a Complete the sentences under each heading in your own words. Think about why you like (or don't like) them.

Things I like about my country

My favourite thing about _____ is...
I really love...
I also like...

Things I don't like about my country

One thing that I don't like is... I also don't like...

b Compare your sentences with a partner and say why. Do you like the same things?

My favourite thing about Italy is the food, because I love pasta and real Italian pasta is fantastic.

Useful words: Why? and because

Use because to answer the question Why? I don't like the weather **because** it rains a lot.

WHAT FOREIGNERS WHO LIVE IN BRITAIN THINK

Erdal, 39, is from Turkey. He has a café in Cardiff. In Turkey we work hard and our jobs are important for us. British people don't work like that. They only want to finish work and go home.



Khalal, 39, is from Iraq. He lives in Newcastle. I don't like the weather. One minute it's hot and the next it rains. It changes all the time. And I don't like the food. Potatoes, potatoes, potatoes...

Camille, 20, is from France. She lives in Liverpool. The British are friendly. People in the street often call me 'love', 'sweetheart', and 'darling'. It makes me happy!

Shurooq, 21, is from Oman. She lives in Chorlton, Manchester. In the UK women have a lot of freedom. In my country, if I want to go to the bank I take my brother and he does everything for me. Here I do everything. I like the weather here. I love days when it rains, or it's cold. It's so different from the weather in Oman! The people are also nice and friendly.

Michelle, 24, is from Canada. She lives in London. My favourite thing about Britain is the Scotch eggs. We don't have Scotch eggs where I come from. Everybody says that British food is awful, but I love it, especially in pubs. The shops are great, too, for example, Topshop and Primark.

Lian Tang, 24, is from China. She lives in Manchester. I love the UK. Why? Because I like the culture, the art, the history. I also love the beautiful scenery, for example in Cornwall and in Scotland. The only things I don't like about the UK are the weather and the food. I really don't like fish and chips.



Do you work at night?

Yes, I'm a taxi driver.

G present simple ? V jobs P /3:/ and /3/

GRAMMAR present simple 2

- Look at the photo of Jess and her husband Carl. What's his job? Find the answer in the interview with Jess.
- Read the interview. Complete 1–5 with questions from the list.

Do you have time together? Does he have free weekends? What do you do, Jess? What does your husband do? Do you work long hours?

3.8 Listen and check.

- Cover the interview and look at the questions in **b**. How does Jess answer them?
- Do you work or study at night? What problems do you have?
- Look at the questions in **b** again. Which are...?
 - 1 about Jess
 - 2 about her husband
 - 3 about Jess and her husband
- **G**p.128 **Grammar Bank 3B**

He works at night,

Adapted from a website

but she works during the day...





Potatoes

dog food

pm

Sunday

FEED DOGS MTWTHFSS

¹What do you do, Jess?

I work in an office. I'm an administrator.

No, I don't. I work normal hours, from 9.00 to 5.00, Monday to Friday.

He's a police officer. He works at night, from 8.00 p.m. to 6.00 in the morning.

No, he doesn't. Well, he has two free days, but they're Wednesday and Thursday. He works Saturday and Sunday they're busy nights for police officers.

Not really, except when we're on vacation. I'm in bed when he comes home; he's in bed when I leave home in the morning. We don't eat together. That's awful. Sometimes I don't cook, I just have cookies for dinner.

Can you think of any good things about your different hours?

Yes, we earn more money because Carl does a lot of overtime.

Do you have any suggestions for couples like you? Have a whiteboard in your hall or your kitchen and write down all the housework. Then tick things when you do them. That way, the dogs don't eat twice!

Glossary overtime extra hours

2 VOCABULARY jobs

a Complete the sentences with a job from the list.

	ctor administrator ceptionist teacher	police officer
1	Ain a police station.	works in the street, or
2	An	works in a theatre.
3	Α	works in a school.
4	Α	works in a hotel.
5	An	works in an office.

b Vp.154 Vocabulary Bank Jobs

c What do you do? What do your parents do? Ask three other students in the class.

3 PRONUNCIATION /31/ and /a/

a ①3.12 Listen to the words and sounds. Then listen and repeat.

bird	nurse thirty her work journalist
computer	lawyer driver builder doctor actor administrator

ur, ir, and er usually = /31/ when they are stressed, e.g. university. or after w usually = /31/, e.g. work. er and or = /9/ when they are unstressed, e.g. teacher.

b 3.13 Listen to the sentences. Then practise saying them.

Doctors and lawyers earn a lot.

Journalists work all over the world.

She's a teacher. Her name's Ursula.

He's a taxi driver. He works thirty hours a week.

I'm a waiter in a burger restaurant.

I study German at university.



4 LISTENING

- a ①3.14 Listen to Part 1 of a game show called *His job*, her job. Three people ask Alex and Sue about their jobs. Underline the questions they ask Alex.
- b Listen again. What are Alex's answers? Write ✓ (yes), ✗ (no), or D (it depends).

Where?	Alex	Sue
/ work outside?		
/ work inside?		
/ work in an office?	×	
/ work at home?		
When?		
/ work in the evening?		
/ work at night?		
/ work at the weekend?		
How?		
/ work with the public?		
/ work in a team?		
/ work long hours?		
Other		
/ have special qualifications?		
/ have good holidays?		
/ speak foreign languages?		
/ travel?		
/ drive?		
/ make things?		
/ wear a uniform or special clothes?		
/ earn a lot of money?		
/ like your job?		

- c ③3.15 Now listen to Part 2 and do the same for Sue.
- d Look at their answers and make sentences about them. What do you think their jobs are?

(Alex doesn't work in an office. (He sometimes works in the evening.

e @3.16 Listen. What do Alex and Sue do?

5 SPEAKING

a In groups of four, play *His job*, *her job*. Choose jobs from **Vocabulary Bank** Jobs **p.154**. Ask questions to guess them.

(Do you work at night?

b Now think of a person you know who has one of the jobs. Is it a man or a woman? Play the game again.

(Does she speak foreign languages?

Love me, love my dog

What kind of music do you like?

I like classical music.

G word order in questions **V** question words **P** sentence stress

LISTENING

①3.17 A man and a woman meet in the park. Listen. Match the names to the people or dogs. What do you find out about the dogs?

his dog Becca -Barry the man her dog Dave Dolly the woman

3.18 Listen to their conversation at the café. What happens in the end?



D It's really hot. Would you ¹ <u>like</u> a drink?
Or an ice cream?
B Yes, why not? Let's go to the café.
D ² kind of ice cream do you
B Er, a Magnum if they have it
D Here you are. One Magnum.
B Thanks, Dave.
D 3?
B Very near here, in Park Road. And you?
D I live quite near, in Queen's Road. 4
do you, Becca?
B I'm a journalist.
D Really? How interesting! Do you 5
for a newspaper?
B No, for TV. 6 about you?
D I'm a teacher. I'm on holiday now.
B Me too. Oh! My ice cream.
D Dolly! Bad dog! I'm really sorry.
B That's OK.
D Do you ⁷ another ice cream?
B No, thanks.
D Are you sure? I'm really sorry. Look, let's have
lunch one day. Are you free on Saturday?
B Oh, well, OK then, Yes, Thanks very much.

3.19 Read the information box. Listen and repeat the phrases for showing interest. Copy the intonation.

Showing interest

When you have a conversation, show interest in what the other person says. Use Really? How interesting! What about you? Me too., etc.

Practise the conversation in **c** with a partner.



3.20 Becca goes to Dave's flat. Listen and complete the sentences with ${\bf B}$ (Becca) or ${\bf D}$ (Dave).

lives on the first floor. likes the flat.

doesn't really like dogs.

doesn't have a big flat.

has two cats.

makes pasta and ice cream for lunch.

Do you think the lunch is a success?



2 GRAMMAR word order in questions

a Put the words in order to make the questions.

1	Barry is old how	
2	his name what's	?
_	THIS TRAITIC WHAT'S	?
3	like do it you	
4	about feel do cats you how	?
		?

- b 3.21 Listen and check.
- c **G**p.128 **Grammar Bank 3C**

3 VOCABULARY question words

a Complete the questions with a question word or phrase.

	ow many What What kind of When here Which Who Why
1	What phone do you have?
	I have a Samsung.
2	brothers and sisters do you have?
	I have two sisters.
3	do you prefer, cats or dogs?
	Cats, I think.
4	do you work?
	In a restaurant in the city centre.
5	do you have language classes?
	On Mondays and Wednesdays.
6	music do you like?
	I like pop and reggae.
7	's your favourite actor?
	Benedict Cumberbatch.
8	do you like him?
	Because he's a fantastic actor.

- b 3.24 Listen and check. Then answer the questions.
 - 1 How is Wh-pronounced in Who?
 - 2 How is Wh-pronounced in the other question words?
 - 3 What's the difference between What...? and Which...?

4 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

a 3.25 Listen to the questions. Then listen and repeat. Copy the rhythm.

Where do you work?

What phone do you have?

What kind of music do you like?

Who's your favourite actor?

b Work in pairs. A ask B the questions in 3a. B give your own answers. Then change roles.

5 SPEAKING

a Look at the questions. What words are missing in each group?

Where		live work / study	?
vynat kind ot	ms ood	like	?
sports magazine What TV progra language car	ammes	play read watch speak have	?
Who	your favourite	singer actress TV programme	?
What		restaurant	

- **b** Work in pairs. Interview a partner with the questions in **a**. Then change roles.
 - A Ask B the first question.
 - **B** Answer the question. Give more information if you can.
 - A Show interest. Then ask the next question.
 - A Where do you live?)
 - (B In the centre of town, near the station.
 - A Really? Me too.



Op.113 Writing A personal profile Write a profile of yourself.

Practical English Coffee to take away

buying a coffee

V telling the time

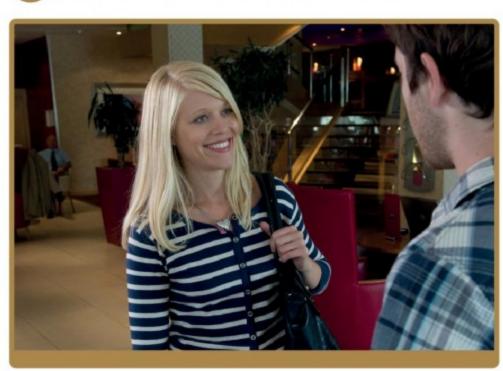
1 VOCABULARY telling the time

a Look at the clock. What time is it?



- b Vp.157 Vocabulary Bank Time Do Part 1.
- c GCommunication What's the time? A p.104 B p.109 Practise times.

2 ROB AND JENNY MEET



- a ①3.27 Watch or listen to what happens when Rob and Jenny meet. What do they decide to do?
- **b** Watch or listen again. Answer the questions. Why...?
 - 1 is Rob late
 - 2 doesn't Jenny like the hotel breakfast
 - 3 is Jenny busy after 9.30
 - 4 does Rob say 'Don't worry.'

BUYING A COFFEE



a Look at the coffee shop menu. Do you know what all these things are?

se things are.		
ESPRESSO	single 2.45	double 2.80
AMERICANO	regular 3.15	large 3.95
LATTE	regular 3.45	large 3.65
CAPPUCCINO	regular 3.45	large 3.65
TEA	regular 2.65	large 3.10
BROWNIE	3.00	
CROISSANT	3.00	

- **b** 3.28 Watch or listen to Rob and Jenny buying coffee. Answer the questions.
 - 1 What kinds of coffee do Jenny and Rob have?
 - 2 What do they have to eat?
 - 3 How much is it?
- c Watch or listen again. Complete the You hear phrases.

You hear	You say
Can I ¹ you?	What would you like, Jenny?
	An espresso, please.
² or double?	Double.
	Can I have a latte, please?
3 or large?	Large.
To have ⁴ or take away?	To take away.
Anything else?	No, thanks.
	A brownie for me, pleaseand a croissant.
OK.	How much is that?
That's £12.45, please.	Sorry, how much?
£12.45. Thank you.	
And your 5	Thanks.

- d 3.29 Watch or listen and repeat the **You say** phrases. Copy the <u>rhy</u>thm.
- e In threes, practise the conversation.
- f When the coffee shop menu. Role-play the conversation in groups of three. Then change roles.
 - A (book open) You are the barista.
 - **B** (book closed) You invite **C** (book closed) to have a drink.
 - A begin Can I help you?
 - B ask C What would you like?

Glossary
barista a person who works in a coffee shop

4 PIRST DAY IN THE OFFICE



- a @3.30 Watch or listen and answer the questions.
 - 1 What's Karen's job?
 - 2 Where in Europe does Jenny have family?
 - 3 Where does she live in New York?
 - 4 Does Karen have family in New York?
 - 5 What does Daniel offer Jenny to drink?
 - 6 What time is his next meeting?
- b Look at the Social English phrases. Who says them: Rob, Karen, or Daniel?

Soc	ial English
1	Here we are.
2	Is this your first time in the UK?
3	Would you like something to drink?
4	Talk to you later.

- c ③3.31 Watch or listen and check. Then watch or listen and repeat the phrases.
- d Complete conversations A–D with Social English phrases 1–4. Practise with a partner.

Α	Sit down.	No, thanks, I'm fine.	
В	Bye.	Bye.	
С	Nice to meet you.	No, it isn't. I know London very well.	
D	OK. This is your hotel.	Oh, it's very nice.	

CAN YOU...?

tell the time

order food and drink in a café

meet and introduce people



Family photos

Who's that?

She's my niece - my brother's daughter.

G possessive 's, Whose...? V family P /A/, the letter o

- **GRAMMAR** possessive 's, Whose...?
- Look at the title of the article and the photo of Doug. Who do you think his brother is? Do you think it's good or bad to have a famous person in your family?
- Read the article. Now do you know who Doug's brother is? Does he like having a famous brother?

I'M NOT FAMOUS... **BUT MY BROTHER IS**

Doug is a businessman, and a photographer. He is also the founder of Care to Learn, an organization which helps poor children in the USA to do well at school. He's married with three children, and he and his family have a normal life. But for many people, he is always 's brother'.

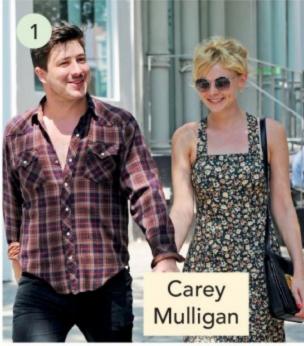
Doug's life can be difficult. People follow him in the street. They ask him questions about his brother, his brother's ex-wife, who is also very famous, and their six children. The paparazzi follow Doug's children and take photographs.

But it also has advantages. I go to film premieres and I meet famous actors. And when I phone people and ask for money for Care to Learn, it helps when I say 's brother.' I'm

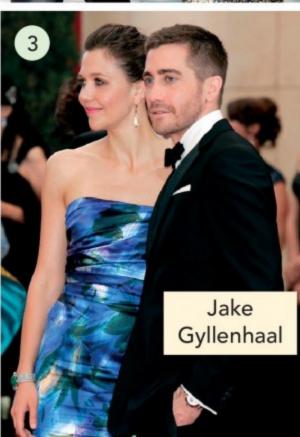
Doug is not jealous of his older brother. He is happy with his life. I see the world of famous people from the outside. I can leave it, but my brother can't.'

Adapted from a website

Look at some photos of actors with family. With a partner, choose a or b below.











- 1 He's Carey Mulligan's
- 2 She's Meryl Streep's
- 3 She's Jake Gyllenhaal's
- 4 He's Morgan Freeman's
- 5 He's Mary-Kate Olsen's
- a husband.
- a sister.
 - **b** daughter. b sister.

b brother.

b husband.

a wife.

a father.

- **b** brother. a son.
- 4.1 Listen and check.
- @ p.130 Grammar Bank 4A
- Look at some things from the photos. Whose are they? Ask and answer with a partner.

Whose bow tie is it?) (It's Morgan Freeman's bow tie.









2 VOCABULARY family

- a Vp.155 Vocabulary Bank The family
- b In pairs, answer the questions.

Who's...?

1 your mother's mother
2 your father's brother
3 your brother's / sister's daughter
4 your aunt's child
5 your husband's / wife's brother
6 your niece's brother

my grandmother
my ______
my _____
my _____
my _____
my _____

3 PRONUNCIATION /A/, the letter o



up

mother brother son husband uncle couple cousin

Remember!

The same vowel in English can be pronounced in different ways, e.g. o can be $\frac{n}{n}$ (n o t), $\frac{n}{n}$ (n o t), $\frac{n}{n}$ (n o t), and $\frac{n}{n}$ (n o t).

b How is the letter o pronounced in these words? Put them in the correct column.

come do doctor don't go home job London model money no one Scotland strong who

			uff	
clock	phone	up	boot	
doctor	don't	come	do	

- c 4.5 Listen and check. Practise saying the words.
- d Practise the conversations with a partner.
 - 1 A Who's that?
 - B My mother.
 - A She's very young!
 - B No, she's sixty-one. She's a doctor.
 - 2 A Who are they?
 - B My brother and his son.
 - A Do they live in Scotland?
 - B No, they don't. They live in London.
 - 3 A What's her job?
 - B She's a model. She earns a lot of money.

4 LISTENING & SPEAKING



a ①4.6 Listen to Grace showing a friend photos on her phone. Who are Mark, Celia, and Miriam? Complete the first row of the chart.

	Mark	Celia	Miriam
Grace's	boyfriend		
More information			

- **b** Listen again. Write down more information, e.g. ages, jobs, where they live, etc.
- c Work with a partner.
 - A Show B some photos of family or friends on your phone or write their names on a piece of paper.
 - **B** Ask three questions about each person.

Who's that?

(That's Yolanda. She's my sister.

How old is she?)



From morning to night

What time do you go At 8.00. to work?

G prepositions of time (at, in, on) and place (at, in, to) V daily routine P linking

1 VOCABULARY daily routine

- 4.7 Listen to the sounds and number the phrases 1-6.
 - get dressed
 - 1 wake up
 - have breakfast
 - have a shower
 - go to work / school
 - have a coffee / tea
- What order do you do these things in the morning? Tell your partner.

First I wake up, then I...

Vp.156 Vocabulary Bank Daily routine

PRONUNCIATION linking

Connected speech

Remember, when people speak they usually link words together. Sometimes three linked words sound like one word, e.g. I getupat seven.

4.9 Listen and write five sentences.

(5 words)		
(5 words)		
(6 words)		
(6 words)		
(5 words)		

4.10 Listen and repeat the sentences.

Try to link the words with .

I get_up_at seven.

I have a shower.

I go to work.

I have a sandwich for lunch.

I get home at six.

I make the dinner.

I go to bed at ten.

What_a life!

READING & LISTENING

Read the article. Use the glossary to help you. How do you think Marjan feels at the end of a typical day? Choose from the adjectives in the list.

bored happy relaxed sad stressed tired

MOTHER

Marjan Jahangiri, originally from Iran, is one of the only women professors of cardiac surgery in Europe. She does more than 300 operations a year. She lives in London with her husband and their 17-year-old son, Darius.

Can you describe your daily routine?



I get up between 6.00 and 6.30 a.m., I get to work at 7.00, and my meetings usually start at 7.30. After that, I don't have a break. I have lunch at my desk. I often do two operations a day, and I also have lectures and more meetings. At

home, I have dinner with my son. Between 9.30 and 11.30 p.m., I do research and I watch the news on TV. One or two nights a week I'm on call, so I probably need to do operations during the night. I often work at weekends, too. But that's OK – I think I have a fantastic life because I love my work.

How do you balance work with your family life?

I spend a lot of time with my son. I want him to learn about hard work and good values, and I want to be an example for him. My husband is away a lot, but we speak on the phone every day. I think one reason why I am successful in my professional life is because he isn't at home all the time!

What do you do to relax?

I play the piano for an hour every day, late at night. I think it helps me with my operations – it's technical in the same way. I also go to the hairdresser twice a week. I do a lot of my research there!

They turn the music off for me and I use the time to read all my academic papers.

Adapted from the British press

Glossary

cardiac surgery an operation to repair sb's heart a lecture a talk to a group of people to teach them about sth, e.g. at university be on call be available for work if necessary

do research study sth to learn more about it

- **b** Read the article again. In pairs, answer the questions from memory.
 - 1 What time does Marjan get up?
 - 2 What does she do when she's at work?
 - 3 Where does she have lunch?
 - 4 What does she do in the evening?
 - 5 Is her job a 9-5 job? Why (not)?
 - 6 Does she see her family a lot?
 - 7 How does she relax?
 - 8 Does she like her job?



MORNING

 1 7.30 He gets up.

He has breakfast and then he goes to school by Tube.

8.20 ² He to school.

9.00 Lessons start. ³ He has _____ or _

AFTERNOON

1.00 He has lunch at ⁴______

5____ He starts lessons again.

lessons before lunch.

4.15 He finishes school. He doesn't ⁶_____

_____ then. He studies in the library or plays music. On Tuesdays, he ⁷_____ in the school choir and on ⁸____ he ⁹____ percussion in the school orchestra.



EVENING

6.00 He gets home. ¹⁰ He _____ and then has dinner. After dinner, he does homework for ¹¹_____ or ___ hours.

¹²_____ He goes to bed.

Glossary

the Tube the London
Underground
choir a group of people
who sing together
percussion musical
instruments, e.g. drums
A levels exams that UK
students take in the final
year of school

- c ①4.11 Listen to Darius, Marjan's 17-year-old son, talking about his day. Complete gaps 1–12.
- d What do Marjan and Darius have in common? Who do you think is more tired in the evening?

4 GRAMMAR prepositions of time and place

a Look at some sentences from Darius's day. Complete them with at, in, on, or to.

1 I get up ____ 7.30.

2 I usually go ____ school by Tube.

3 I have lunch ____ school.

4 I usually have two or three lessons ____ the afternoon.

5 I sing in the school choir ____ Tuesdays.

- **b 1 4.12** Listen and check.
- c Gp.130 Grammar Bank 4B
- d 4.15 Listen and say the time phrases with the correct preposition.
 - 1)) the weekend (at the weekend

5 SPEAKING & WRITING

a Look at the questions to ask your partner. What two words are missing?

What time / get up?

/ have breakfast in the morning? What / have?

How / go to work or school?

What time / start work or school?

What time / have lunch? Where?

/ have a long lunch break? How long?

What time / finish work or school?

What / do after work or school?

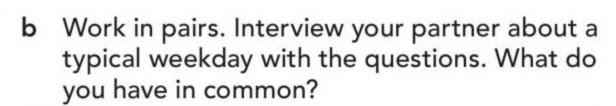
/ go out during the week? Where / go?

/ relax in the evening? What / do?

When / do English homework?

What time / go to bed?

How / feel at the end of the day?



(We both get up at 7.00.

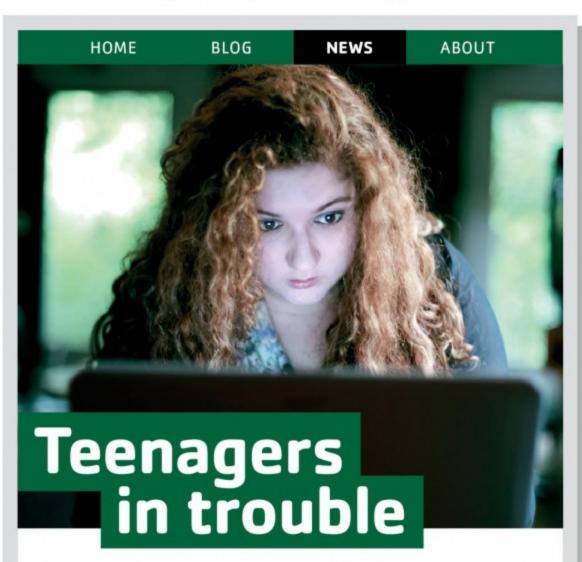


How often do you eat fish?

Hardly ever. Maybe once a month.

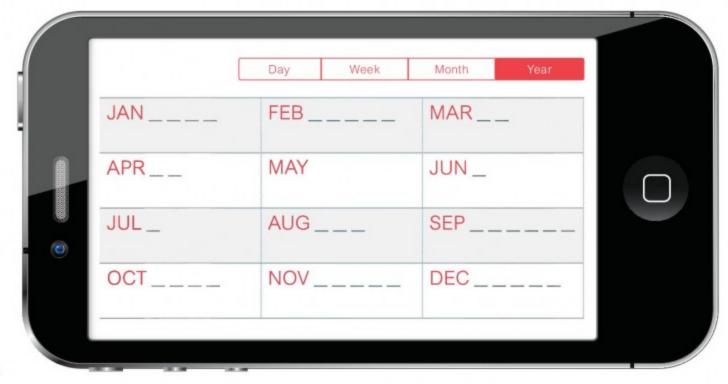
G position of adverbs, expressions of frequency \mathbf{V} months, adverbs and expressions of frequency \mathbf{P} the letter h

- **VOCABULARY** months, adverbs and expressions of frequency
- 4.16 Complete the months in the phone diary. Listen and check.
- Listen again and repeat the months. Which five are stressed on the second syllable?
- Say the month of your birthday round the class.
- **V** p.157 **Vocabulary Bank** Time Do Parts 2 and 3.
- **GRAMMAR** position of adverbs, expressions of frequency
- Read the text about teenagers in the USA. Are teenagers in your country similar?

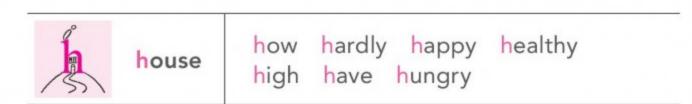


American teenagers may, for the first time in the nation's history, live shorter lives than their parents because of their unhealthy lifestyles. According to recent research:

- 96% spend more than five hours looking at a screen every day.
- 86% hardly ever eat fruit or green vegetables.
- 75% don't usually sleep for eight hours a day the average is seven hours.
- 34% eat fast food at least once a day.
- 33% drink more than four sugary drinks every day.
- 31% are often very stressed.
- 25% never do sport or exercise.



- **b** Look at the position of the highlighted words and expressions. Circle the correct rule.
 - 1 Adverbs of frequency (e.g. usually) go: before / after a main verb. before / after the verb be.
 - 2 Expressions of frequency (e.g. every week) go at the beginning / at the end of a phrase or sentence.
- © p.130 Grammar Bank 4C
- Communication Short life, long life? p.104 Do the questionnaire.
- **PRONUNCIATION** the letter h
- 4.21 Listen to the words and sound. Then listen and repeat.



1 4.22 Listen. Circle one word where h is not pronounced. Then practise saying the sentences.

Harry's a hairdresser.

He hardly ever has breakfast.

He's often in a hurry.

He usually has half an hour for lunch.

He often has a hamburger for dinner.

Harry isn't very healthy.

In pairs, make true sentences about you with the verb phrases and an adverb or expression of frequency.

be at home on Saturday night be in a hurry do housework go to the hairdresser have a healthy lunch have a hot bath sleep for eight hours

I'm not usually at home on Saturday night.

4 READING & SPEAKING

- a Look at the photos and read the text. What are the 'Blue Zones'? How old do you think Alexis and María are?
- **b Communication A** Ikaria p.104 **B** Nicoya p.110 Read and tell your partner about the place.
- c What words and phrases can you remember from the articles? With a partner, write words in each category.



5 D VIDEO LISTENING



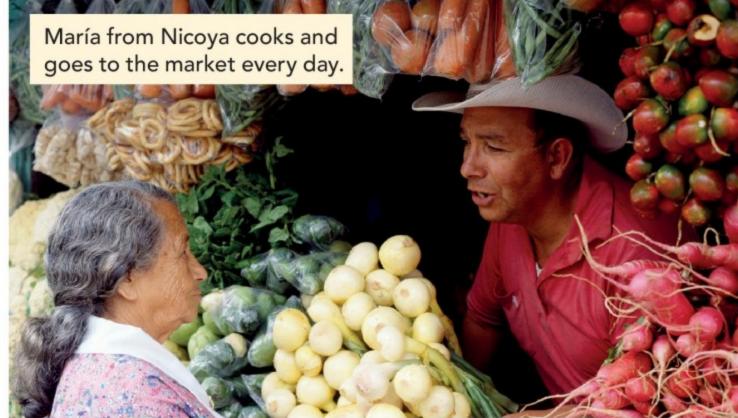
- a Watch the documentary The island of Okinawa. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
 - 1 The island of Okinawa is north of Japan.
 - 2 70-year-old Okinawans have the bodies of 50-year-olds.
 - 3 Hara hachi means stop eating before you're full.
 - 4 The Okinawans don't eat meat or fish.
 - 5 They eat a lot of seaweed.
 - 6 They do yoga every day.
 - 7 The Okinawans are often in a hurry.
 - 8 When Okinawans reach 100 they have a ceremony called *kajimaya*.
- **b** Watch again and correct the **F** sentences.
- c What does Okinawa have in common with Ikaria and Nicoya? Are there people in your country who live like this? In what ways is your lifestyle similar to or different from life in the 'Blue Zones'? Would you like to live in one of the 'Blue Zones'?



What are their secrets?

What do the Greek island of Ikaria, the Nicoya peninsula in Costa Rica, and the island of Okinawa in Japan have in common? The answer is that, together with Loma Linda in California and Sardinia in Italy, they are the five so-called 'Blue Zones', the best places in the world to live if you want to have a long and healthy life. Many people there live until they are 100 or more. So what are their secrets?





3&4 Revise and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle	a, b, or c.
1	I live near here.
	a not b don't c doesn't
2	My sister three children.
	a has b have c haves
3	English?
	a Are they speak
	b Speak they
	c Do they speak
4	your sister work?
	a Does b Is c Do
5	A Do you work here? B Yes, I
	a work b do c am
6	A What? B He's an engineer.
	a he does b does he c does he do
7	What languages?
	a speak you
	b do you speak
0	c you speak
0	Bill is a Carla's husband
	b husband's Carla
	c the Carla's husband
9	This is my house.
,	a parent's b parents' c parents
10	is this book?
	a Who's b Who c Whose
11	We usually have lunch two o'clock
	a in b on c at
12	What time do you go bed?
	a in b to c at
13	She late for class.
	a never is b is never c isn't never
14	I early.
	a usually get up b get usually up
	c get up usually
15	I have an English class
	a one a week
	b one the week
	c once a week

VOCABULARY

a Complete with at, in, on, to, or up.

1	Saturday nig	tht I go to the cinema.
2	I'm a student. I'm	university.

- 3 What time do you usually wake ____?
- 4 My brother lives ____ a flat.
- 5 What time do you go ____ work?

b Complete the phrases with these verbs.

do	get	go	have	listen	play	read	see	take	wear
1 dressed						6	the guitar		
2 _	the dog for a walk				/alk	7	to music		
3 _	a shower					8		frier	nds
4 _	4 your homework				k	9 the newspa			newspaper
5 _			shoppi	ng		10		glas	

- c Circle the word that is different.
 - 1 brother grandfather niece uncle
 - 2 aunt husband mother-in-law stepsister
 - 3 chef cleaner factory pilot
 - 4 always early often never
 - 5 April August July Monday
- d Complete with How many, Who, Why, What, or Where.

1	do you live?
2	does your father do?
3	is your favourite family member?
4	hours do you work?
5	do you want to learn English?

PRONUNCIATION

a Practise the words and sounds.

Vowel sounds









bird

computer

up

clock

Consonant sounds









house

flower

chess

witch

- b Pp.166-167 Sound Bank Say more words for each sound.
- c What sound do the pink letters have in these words?
 - 1 brother 2 nephew 3 teacher 4 which 5 work
- d Underline the stressed syllable.
 - 1 be|cause2 den|tist3 un|em|ployed4 po|lice|man
 - d 5 grand|mo|ther

CAN YOU understand this text?

Read the article once. What is unusual about David Guetta's life?



I wake up at about 1.00 p.m., and the first thing I do is go outside. I live in Ibiza and I like having breakfast in the sun. I usually have fruit juice, eggs, fruit, and tea. I never drink coffee. After breakfast, I answer my emails for an hour, then I go to the gym.

I never listen to music in the house, or even in the car, because music is my job. On a typical day I spend two or three hours in my studio, then another four hours at a nightclub. My work starts in the evening. I usually have dinner in a restaurant, and then I go to the club. I try to have a normal life, but my job isn't normal. I arrive at a club like a secret agent - I go in through the back door and Security takes me to the stage.

I finish work at 4.00 in the morning. Security takes me out, and then I go home. After about four hours playing music I'm very excited. My manager says, 'Go home and sleep', but that's impossible. First I need to calm down. When I get home I have a cup of tea, brush my teeth and say, 'Thank you for this wonderful life'. I am 47 now, but I want to do this when I'm 60 or 80. I want to do this forever.

b Read the article again. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).

- 1 He gets up in the afternoon.
- 2 He only eats fruit for breakfast.
- 3 He does exercise every day.
- 4 He works six to seven hours a day.
- 5 He eats out in the evening.
- 6 When he finishes work he goes home and sleeps.
- 7 He doesn't want to change his life.

CAN YOU understand these people?

4.23 Watch or listen and answer the questions.



- 1 Talitha works
 - a 27 hours a week
 - **b** in a market
 - c 37 hours a week
- 2 Joelle has ____.
 - a a 13-year-old sister
 - b a 30-year-old sister
 - c three sisters
- 3 Sophie usually gets up at ____ at weekends.
 - a 7.30
 - b 9.00
 - c 9.30
- 4 Brian
 - goes to the gym and does yoga
 - **b** plays football and does yoga
 - c goes to the gym and plays a team sport
- 5 Tom likes ____ in New York.
 - a the taxis
 - b the people
 - c the food

CAN YOU say this in English?

Do the tasks with a partner. Tick (✔) the box if you can do these things.

Can you...?

- 1 say where you live and what you do
- say what time you usually get up and go to bed
- say what you do on a typical Monday morning
- ask questions with the words below
 - What sports...?
- What languages...?
- What kind of music...? What TV programmes...?

Yes, Can you but I can't sing? dance.

G can / can't V verb phrases: buy a newspaper, etc. P sentence stress

VOCABULARY verb phrases

Can you remember these verb phrases for things people do in their free time? Match the words.

go ^{play} do **watch** have listen

exercise to music a coffee the guitar to the gym

V p.158 Vocabulary Bank More verb phrases

LISTENING

- In your country, do you have TV competitions for people who do things well, e.g. sing, dance, or cook? Do you watch them? Why (not)?
- 5.2 Amy goes to an audition for a TV singing competition. Look at the pictures. Then listen and answer questions 1-9.
- 5.3 Now listen to Amy, Justin, and Naomi sing. Vote for the person you want to be in the show.
- 5.4 Listen to what the judges say. Do they agree with you? How does Amy feel?









3 GRAMMAR can / can't

- a Look at four can / can't sentences (1–4) from Amy's story. Match them to their meanings (a–d).
 - 1 You can't sing!
 - 2 You can't come in if you don't have ID.
 - 3 Can you come with me, please?
 - 4 She can wait there.
 - a It isn't OK.
 - b It's possible.
 - c Please do it.
 - d You don't know how.

b **G**p.132 **Grammar Bank 5A**

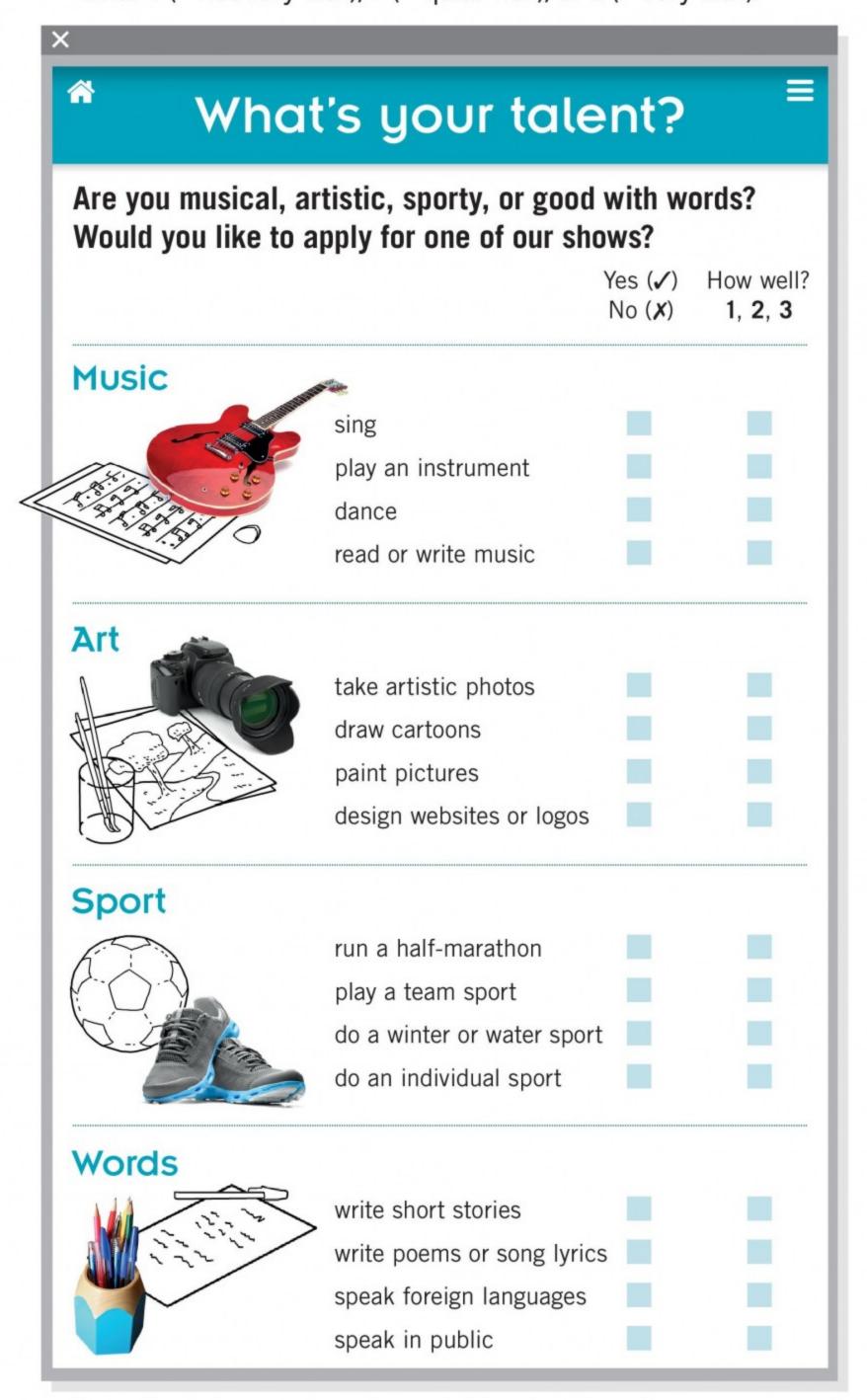
4 PRONUNCIATION

sentence stress

- a **5.6** Listen to the conversations. Then listen and repeat. Copy the <u>rhy</u>thm.
 - 1 A Can you play a <u>mu</u>sical <u>in</u>strument?
 - B Yes, | can.
 - A What can you play?
 - B I can play the guitar.
 - 2 A Where can I sit?
 - B You can sit over there.
 - 3 A Can | park here?
 - B No, you can't. You can't park here.
- **b 5.7** Listen. Can you hear the difference?
 - 1 a I can sing.
 - b I can't sing.
 - 2 a She can dance very well.
 - b She can't dance very well.
 - 3 a He can cook.
 - b He can't cook.
 - 4 a I can come to the meeting.
 - b I can't come to the meeting.
 - 5 a You can park here.
 - b You can't park here.
 - 6 a I can drive.
 - b I can't drive.
- c 🐠 5.8 Listen. Circle a or b.

5 SPEAKING

a Work in pairs. Interview each other with the questionnaire. Ask Can you...? If the answer is Yes, I can., ask How well? and write 1 (= not very well), 2 (= quite well), or 3 (= very well).



- b Look at your partner's answers. What can he or she do? Can you think of any competitions or TV shows he or she can enter?
- c Change partners and tell your new partner what your first partner can or can't do.

What are you doing?

I'm trying to study.

G present continuous: be + verb + -ing

V noise: verbs and verb phrases

1 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING noise: verbs and verb phrases

- a Are your family or neighbours noisy? Answer questions 1–4 with a partner.
 - 1 How many family members do you live with?
 - 2 Are they...?
 - a very noisy b quite noisy c not very noisy
 - 3 Do you have neighbours...?
 - a upstairs b downstairs c next door
 - 4 Are they...?
 - a very noisy b quite noisy c not very noisy
- b ①5.9 Read part of a UK online forum. Guess the meaning of the highlighted verbs and verb phrases. Then listen to eight sounds and write 1–8 in the boxes.

NOISY FAMILY? NOISY NEIGHBOURS?

Do you have a problem with noise, for example, when you want to study, or at night when you want to sleep? Tell us about your problems.

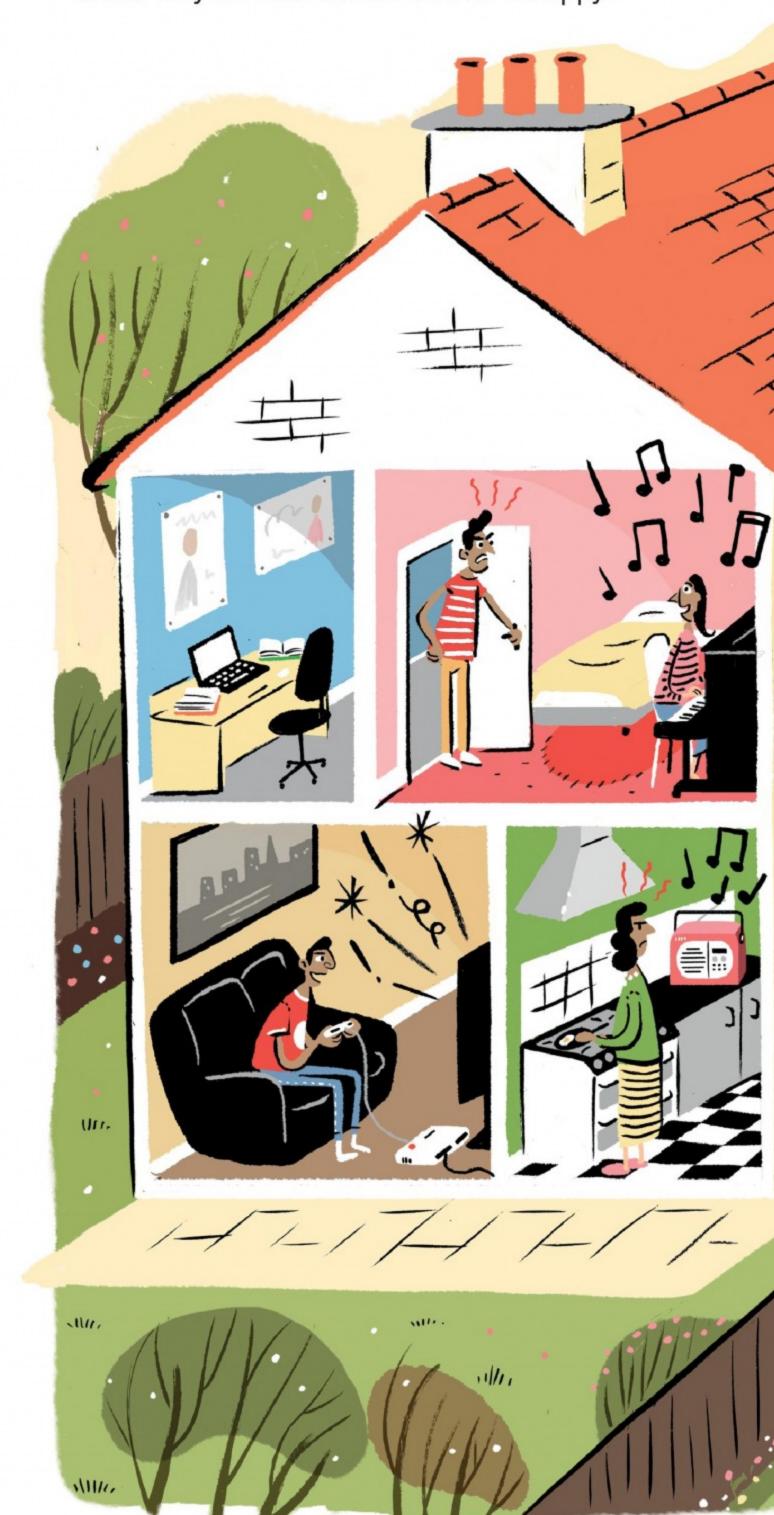
- The baby in the flat upstairs cries all the time.
- My sister practises the piano for hours.
- The neighbours' dog barks all day and all night!
- The people next door often have noisy parties until 3.00 a.m.
- My son plays loud music in his room awful music, too.
- The couple next door argue a lot.
- The old people in the flat next door have the TV on very loud and their living room is next to my bedroom!
- The people next door have builders who make a lot of noise.

c Now answer questions 5–7.

- 5 What noises do your family or neighbours make? Are the noises a problem for you?
- 6 Are you noisy? Do you do any of the things in **b**?
- 7 Are people in your country noisy? Is this a problem?

2 GRAMMAR present continuous

a **5.10** Look at the picture of the houses and listen. Why are Max and his mother unhappy?



digi ZABAN

b Listen again and complete the conversations with verbs from the list.

barking cooking happening having listening making playing practising trying

- 2 Isabel Paul! Come here.
 Paul Yes, dear? What's the matter?
 Isabel What's 7_____ next door? Why's their dog 8_____? I can't hear the radio.
 Paul They're 9_____ a party in the garden.
 Isabel Not again! Can you go and talk to them?
 Paul Yes, good idea. It's their second party in



- c **5.11** Listen. What happens when Paul goes next door?
- d Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb be.

+ They?	having a party next door. _ they playing music?
□ No, they They're talking.	playing music.

e Read the rule and circle the correct option.

We use the present continuous (be + verb + -ing) to talk about now / every day.

f **G**p.132 Grammar Bank 5B

- g **5.13** Listen to the sounds. What's happening? Write eight sentences.
 - 1 Somebody's cooking.

3 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING /ŋ/

a **15.14** Listen to the words and sounds. Then listen and repeat.



b In pairs, point and ask and answer about the people in the picture of the houses.

What's she doing?

(She's playing the piano. What are they doing?

c @ Communication Spot the differences A p.105 B p.110 Describe the pictures and find eight differences.

4 LISTENING

a \$\infty\$5.15 Listen to a short conversation. What's the woman doing?

She's checking in...

- **b** Listen again. What words help you to understand the situation?
- d Listen again. For each conversation, write two words or phrases that help you to understand what's happening.



A city for all seasons

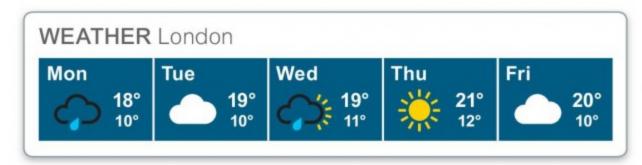


G present simple or present continuous? V the weather and seasons P places in London

VOCABULARY & LISTENING

the weather and seasons

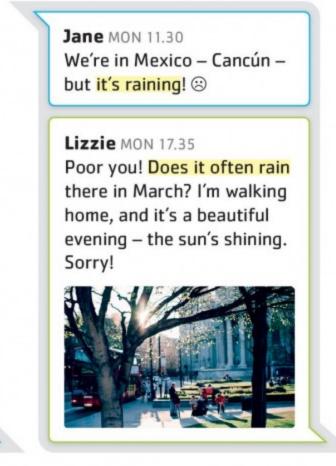
- Look at the weather forecast for the week and answer the questions.
 - 1 What's the maximum temperature? What's the minimum?
 - 2 What time of year do you think it is?
 - 3 Do you think it's typical weather for London?



- **V** p.159 **Vocabulary Bank** The weather and dates Do Part 1.
- **5.19** Listen to a travel guide talking about the weather in London. Mark the sentences T (true) or **F** (false). Then listen again and say why.
 - 1 It's often very hot or very cold.
 - 2 The normal temperature in the summer is 22°C.
 - 3 It often snows in the winter.
 - 4 In spring and autumn the weather changes a lot.
 - 5 It's often grey and foggy in the city centre.
- What's the weather like where you live in different seasons?
- **GRAMMAR** present simple or present continuous?
- Look at the photos and the messages. Why are Tim and Jane sad?



here in Valencia. (8)



- Read the messages again, and focus on the highlighted verbs. When do we use the present simple? When do we use the present continuous?
- © p.132 Grammar Bank 5C
- C Communication What do you do? What are you doing now? A p.105 B p.111 Ask and answer questions.

What to do in London at different times of the year

In spring

Watch (or run!) the London Marathon. One of Europe's biggest marathons takes place in spring every year,

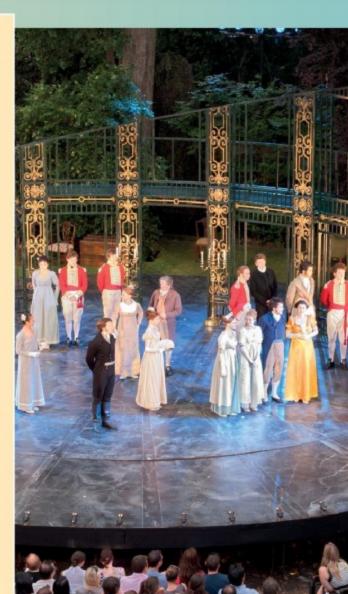
- 05 usually in April. About 40,000 people, including top runners and celebrities, run 26.2 miles through the city. It's a fantastic atmosphere. You
- 10 can watch anywhere along the route, but the Tower of London and the finish, near Buckingham Palace, are my favourite places. April in
- 15 London doesn't always mean good weather - be prepared for sun, showers, and wind!



In summer

Go to the Open Air Theatre in Regent's Park. Open

- 20 from May to September, this is a great place to see Shakespeare and other classics. Come prepared for all types of weather. If
- 25 it rains and it can you can buy plastic raincoats at the theatre. In bad weather they sometimes cancel a performance, but you
- 30 can use your tickets on a different day. You can buy a picnic or take your own, and you can buy dinner, too (quite expensive!).



3 READING & SPEAKING

a Read the questions about things to do in London. Then read the online guide and find the answers. Answer with LM (London Marathon), OAT (Open Air Theatre), TW (Treetop Walkway), or V&A (Victoria and Albert Museum).

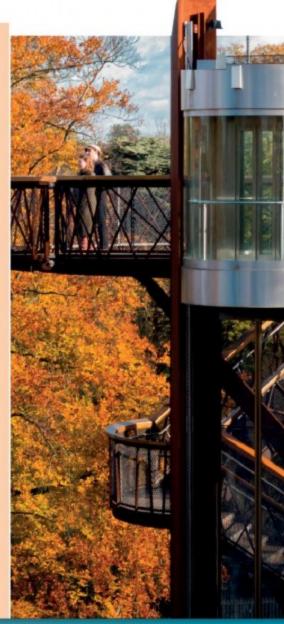
Where can you...?

- 1 ____ learn about nature
- 2 ____ buy food to eat outside
- 3 ____ have a fantastic view
- 4 ____ see beautiful old tables and chairs
- 5 ____ watch what's happening from different places
- 6 ____ buy something to keep you dry
- 7 ____ see famous people doing sport
- 8 ____ have lunch, but not dinner

In autumn

Walkway at Kew Gardens.
This is one of the highlights of Kew, London's botanical gardens. It's open all year

- in autumn when the trees are changing colour. The Walkway is 18 metres above the ground, and you can see
- famous buildings, including Wembley Stadium. You can also see birds and insects very close up, and
- 50 find out all about the trees around you. But if the weather is very windy, the Walkway sometimes closes.



In winter

Visit the V&A. London is

- 55 full of wonderful museums, where you can happily spend a cold winter's day. My favourite, which not all tourists know about,
- 60 is the Victoria and Albert Museum, or V&A. It's the world's top museum for art and design, and has amazing collections of clothes,
- 65 furniture, jewellery, clocks, and ceramics. Exhibitions include the clothes of fashion designer Alexander McQueen, and the career of
- 70 David Bowie. It has special activities for children, and a great café open daily until 17.15. Entrance is free, but some exhibitions charge a fee.



b Look back at the guide. Complete the nouns for these adjectives.

1 a fantastic <u>atmosphere</u>
 2 my favourite _____
 3 good (or bad) _____
 4 a great _____, ___
 5 famous ____
 6 wonderful ____
 7 amazing _____

c Talk to a partner.

- Which of the four things would you like to do? Why?
- What are good things to do at different times of year where you live?

4 PRONUNCIATION places in London

a ①5.21 Place names in London are sometimes difficult for visitors to pronounce and understand. Listen and underline the stressed syllable in the bold words.

Bu|cking|ham Pa|lace the Hou|ses of Par|lia|ment
Wem|bley Sta|di|um Tra|fal|gar Square
the Tow|er of Lon|don St Paul's Ca|the|dral
Lei|cester Square West|min|ster A|bbey
Pi|cca|di|lly Cir|cus Co|vent Gar|den

b Listen again and repeat the names.

c Role-play with a partner. Imagine you are in a taxi. A is the driver, B is the passenger. Have a short conversation. Use the phrases below.

A Where do you want to go? Is it far?
Where are you from? Can you stop here, please?
Are you on holiday? How much is it?
Do you like London? Can I pay by credit card?

Where do you want to go?)

(Trafalgar Square, please. Is it far?

5 WRITING

a What social media do you use, e.g. Twitter or Facebook? Do your family and friends use the same ones as you?

b Wp.115 Writing Posting on social media Write posts to say what you're doing on holiday.

Practical English In a clothes shop

buying clothes

V clothes

1 **VOCABULARY** clothes

a Match the words and photos.



- b 05.22 Watch or listen and check.
- c Cover the words and look at the photos. Say the words.

2 MEETING IN THE STREET



a ①5.23 Watch or listen to Jenny and Rob. What problem does Rob have?



b Watch or listen again. Complete the sentences.

1	Rob has a fo	or Jenny.
2	Jenny has another meet	ting with
3	Rob has an interview in	minutes.
4	Jenny's meeting is at _	past nine.
5	Rob needs to buy a new	v
6	They go to a clothes	
7	Jenny needs to answer	her .

c **35.24** Read the information box. Watch or listen and repeat the phrases.



d Cover the box. In pairs, practise apologizing and responding.

3 DBUYING CLOTHES





S = small, M = medium, L = large, XL = extra large

- a ①5.25 Watch or listen to Rob buying a shirt. Answer the questions.
 - 1 What size does Rob want?
 - 2 Does he try it on?
 - 3 How much is the shirt?

b Watch or listen again. Complete the You hear phrases.

You hear	You say
Can I ¹ you?	Yes, what size is this shirt?
Let's see. It's a small. What ² do you need?	A medium.
This is a ³	Thanks. Where can I try it on?
The changing are over there.	Thank you.
⁵ is it?	It's fine. How much is it?
It's £44.99.	

c ①5.26 Watch or listen and repeat the **You say** phrases. Copy the <u>rhy</u>thm.



- d Read the information box. Then practise the conversation in **b** with a partner.
- e We use the photos. In pairs, role-play buying clothes. Then change roles.
 - **A** (book open) You are the shop assistant. Begin *Can I help you?*
 - **B** (book closed) You are the customer. Buy a T-shirt, a jacket, or jeans.



4 D JENNY'S ON THE PHONE

- a **1 5.27** Watch or listen and mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).
 - 1 Jenny is talking to Eddie.
 - 2 She says she doesn't like London.
 - 3 She says she likes the people in the office.
 - 4 Jenny is standing outside the shop.
 - 5 Eddie thinks that Rob is her boss.
 - 6 Jenny loves Rob's new shirt.
- **b** Watch or listen again. Say why the **F** sentences are false.



c Look at the Social English phrases. Who says them: Jenny, Rob, or Eddie?

Soc	ial English	British and					
1	It's so cool!	American English					
2	Right now?	shop = British					
3	Wait a minute.	English					
4	I have to go.	store = American					
5	Have fun!	English					
6	What's wrong?						
7	No way!						

- d 5.28 Watch or listen and check. Then watch or listen and repeat the phrases.
- e Complete conversations A–G with **Social English** phrases 1–7. Practise with a partner.

Α		I can't find my phone. I don't know where it is.
В	What are you doing?	I'm talking to you!
С	What do you think of New York?	I love it!
D	I can't talk now. I'm at a party.	OK.
E	Let's go – come on!	I'm just finishing an email.
F	Would you like a coffee?	I never drink coffee in the evening.
G	Bye.	Bye. See you later.

CAN YOU...?

apologize
buy clothes
say prices

A North African story

Do you know him?

Yes, but I don't like him.

G object pronouns: me, you, him, etc. V words in a story P /aɪ/, /ɪ/, and /iː/



SPEAKING

- How do you usually read, on paper or on screen? Which do you prefer? Why?
- © Communication Reading in English p.105 What are your reading habits?

READING

- 40 6.1 Read and listen to Part 1 of a traditional story. Answer the questions.
 - 1 Who are Hassan and Walid? Where do they live?
 - 2 What kind of life do they have?
 - 3 In what way are Hassan and Walid different?
 - 4 What valuable thing does their mother have? Why doesn't she want to sell it?
 - 5 Why does Hassan decide to leave home?
- Match the words and pictures.



Read Part 1 again. Then look at the picture. What can you see?

GRAMMAR object pronouns

Look at the highlighted words in Part 1 of the story. Who or what do they refer to?

them = Hassan and Walid

- **G**p.134 **Grammar Bank 6A**
- 40 6.3 Listen and say the sentences with a pronoun instead of the name(s).
 - 1)) I like Anna. (I like her.

The Glass Bottle

PART 1

Hassan and Walid are brothers. They live in a small house in the desert, near the mountains, a long way from a town or village. They're very poor. They have no money and they have no animals. Their house only has two rooms. Every day is the same. They get up, and they have sweet black coffee for breakfast. Then Hassan works in the fields – but Walid just sits and looks at the hot, empty desert and the hot, empty sky. They live with their mother. She looks after them, but she's old and tired.

One day she says, 'We're poor and hungry. Why don't you leave here and find work? We need money for food and clothes.'

'If you want some money, you have your silver ring – you can sell that,' answers Walid.

'I can't sell it', she says. 'It's your father's. Every night I look at it and remember him.'

Hassan wants to help his mother, and he decides to leave home. His mother gives him bread, and water in a glass bottle. He kisses her, and he walks towards the mountains.



READING & LISTENING

- 4 Read and listen to Part 2 of the story. Answer the questions.
 - 1 Where does Hassan go?
 - 2 What happens when he finds the palace?
 - 3 Why is the palace unusual?
 - 4 What does he give the prince?
 - 5 Why is the prince surprised?
 - 6 What does the prince give Hassan?
 - 7 Why is Hassan's mother happy when he comes home?
 - 8 What is Walid's plan?

digi ZABAN

PART 2

Hassan walks for five days through the mountains. The sun shines. At night, it's very cold. Then, one evening, he arrives at a rich and beautiful palace. The prince in the palace welcomes ¹him. He gives him food and drink, and Hassan sleeps in a comfortable bed. There is one strange thing – the windows have no glass.

The next day, Hassan says goodbye. ²He wants to thank the prince and give him something, but he only has ³his empty water bottle. He gives ⁴it to ⁵him. The prince is very surprised.

'What's this?' he says. 'I can see through it! It's beautiful! It's wonderful!'

⁶He is very happy, and in return he gives Hassan a box.

'Don't open ⁷ it until you get home,' he says. 'And be careful with it. It's very valuable.'

Hassan walks through the mountains again, and after five days he arrives home. Walid and ⁸their mother watch ⁹him open the box. He finds 100 gold coins inside. His mother is very happy! 'Hassan, you clever boy!' she says. 'Now ¹⁰we can buy food and clothes!'

The next night, Walid makes a plan.

'100 gold coins in return for a glass bottle,' ¹¹he thinks. 'If I give the prince my mother's silver ring, perhaps I can get 1,000 gold coins!'

So Walid gets up, goes very quietly into his mother's room, and takes ¹²her ring from a box under her bed. The next morning he asks his brother where the palace is, and he leaves.



Pronouns and possessive adjectives

When you read, be careful with pronouns and possessive adjectives, e.g. he, his, him. Make sure you know who (or what) they refer to.

b Read Part 2 of the story again. With a partner, say who or what the highlighted pronouns and possessive adjectives refer to.

The prince in the palace welcomes 1 him. him = Hassan

c 06.5 What do you think happens in Part 3 of the story? Listen and check.

(I think Walid goes to the palace and...

5 **VOCABULARY** words in a story

a Look at these words from the story. Put them in the correct column.

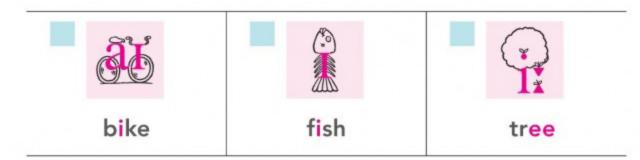
a<u>rrive</u> <u>com</u>fortable de<u>cide</u> <u>de</u>sert in<u>side</u> <u>in</u>to leave <u>moun</u>tain <u>pa</u>lace sell strange sur<u>prised</u> through to<u>wards</u> <u>val</u>uable <u>vi</u>llage

adjectives	verbs	nouns	prepositions		
comfortable	arrive				

106.6 Listen and check. Listen again and repeat.

5 PRONUNCIATION /aɪ/, /ɪ/, and /iː/

a **106.7** Say the three groups of words and match them to a sound picture. Then listen and check.



- 1 him it his ring sit kiss
- 2 he she me meet read leave
- 3 my I buy sky nice high

1	а	he's	b	his	4	а	leave	b	live
2	а	me	b	my	5	а	kiss	b	keys
3	а	it	b	eat	6	а	we	b	whv

- c **106.9** Listen and tick (✓) the word you hear.
- **d** Practise saying the sentences.
 - 1 His mother has a silver ring.
 - 2 She looks at it and thinks of him.
 - 3 That night he decides to leave home.
 - 4 The prince gives him food and drink.
 - 5 After five days he arrives home.

7 SPEAKING

Work in pairs. A, you are Hassan. Tell the story to B until you get home from your journey.

I'm Hassan. I live with my mother and brother in the desert. We're very poor. One day I decide to leave home...

B, you are Walid. Continue the story.

I'm Walid, Hassan's brother. When I see the 100 gold coins, I make a plan. At night I take my mother's ring...



The third Friday in June



G like + (verb + -ing) \mathbf{V} the date, ordinal numbers $\mathbf{P} / \delta /$ and $/ \theta /$, saying the date

VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION the date, ∂ and θ

- Can you remember the months of the year? Say them round the class.
- **V**p.159 **Vocabulary Bank** The weather and dates Do Part 2.
- Listen to the words and sounds. Then listen and repeat.

Š	mother	this the that they
0 :	thumb	Thursday third thirteenth thirtieth

Ordinal numbers first, fourth, etc.

Some ordinal numbers can be difficult to say because they end in two or more consonant sounds, e.g. sixth /siks θ /.

10 6.12 Listen and repeat the ordinal numbers. Then practise saying them.

fifth sixth eighth twelfth

40 6.13 How do you say these dates? Listen and check.

1/3 2/11 3/5 4/6 5/1 6/7 12/9 17/10 20/8 23/2 28/4 31/12

Listen again and repeat the dates. Copy the rhythm.

the first of March

What days are public holidays in your country? What do people do on these days?



2 LISTENING

106.14 Listen to five conversations. Circle the ordinal number you hear.

h 2		
11 2	21st	26th
	13th	30th
(5th	7th
h !	51st	53rd
(9th	16th
	h 5	6th h 51st

b Listen again. Match the ordinal numbers to these things. Write them in the chart in a.

a street a drink a birthday a floor a date

READING

Read the introduction on the forum. What's special about the third Friday in June and the third Monday in January?

Top stories

Good times, bad times

For you

Account

In the UK, the third Friday in June is the happiest day of the year, says psychologist Dr Cliff Arnall. It's easy to see why - it's summer, it's warm outside, the evenings are light, and it's the day before a weekend! And the third Monday in January is the most depressing day of the year. Why? Because it's winter, the weather is usually grey and cold, the days are dark, and Monday is the first day of the working week. People are also often short of money after Christmas, and some people feel bad after breaking their New Year's resolutions. Do you agree? What's your favourite month, day, and time?

And what's your least favourite? 12 answers

Read the forum comments on p.49. Complete them with these months, days, and times.

February	June	October	December
Monday	Friday	Saturday	Sunday
6.30 a.m.	9.00 a	.m. 5.30	o.m. 7.45 p.m.

Look at all the highlighted adjectives. What do they mean?



It's not so bad in the

morning.

I'm absolutely not a

morning person.

- 4 GRAMMAR like + (verb + -ing)
- a Complete the chart with a verb phrase from the list.

I don't like	I don't mind	I hate	I like	llove	
\Box					
$\overline{\mathbf{c}}$					
=					
<u>::</u>					
<u>></u>					

b Complete the sentences from the forum comments.

1	I love c	Christmas and New Year's Eve!
2	I like s	_ outside on long summer evenings
3	I don't mind w_	– I like my job.
4	I don't like th_	about going back to work.
5	I hate g	up early.

What is the form of a verb after love, like, etc.?

c **G**p.134 **Grammar Bank 6B**

d In pairs, make true sentences beginning I like, I hate, etc. and the verb phrases below.

drive at night
swim in a cold sea
watch football on TV
play games on my phone
shop online

5 SPEAKING & WRITING

a In pairs, interview your partner with the questions. Say why when you answer. Are you similar or different?

What's your favourite / least favourite month?
What's your favourite / least favourite day of the week?
What's your favourite / least favourite time of day?

My favourite month is July because I usually go on holiday then, and I love travelling...

b Write one positive and one negative comment for each section of the forum in 3.



What kind of music do you like?

I like classical music, and I love jazz.

G revision: be or do? V music P /j/, giving opinions







VOCABULARY music

Look at the photos of musical instruments. Write the correct word in the instruments column.

accordion bass drums guitar keyboard piano saxophone trumpet violin

instruments	musicians
1 accordion	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	

- 4 6.16 Listen and check.
- 40 6.17 Listen and complete the musicians column.
- Listen again. Focus on the musicians and underline the stressed syllable. Then compare the two columns. When is the stress different?
- 106.18 Cover the chart. Listen to the music and say the name of the instrument and the musician.
- Do you play a musical instrument? How good are you?

GRAMMAR revision: be or do?

- Circle the correct words.
 - 1 What kind of music are you / do you listen to?
 - 2 I'm not / I don't like hip hop.
 - 3 She isn't / doesn't listening to you.
 - 4 Are you / Do you play in a band?
 - 5 Where is / does Adele from?

Gp.134 Grammar Bank 6C

- **◎ 6.21** Listen and make the question.
 - 1)) She's British. (Is she British?
 - 2)) He plays the piano. (Does he play the piano?

3 SPEAKING

Read the questionnaire and think about your answers. Then interview a partner with the questionnaire.

Ask for more information. Do you have similar musical tastes and habits?

MY MUSIC

- 1 What kinds of music do you like? classical music folk hip hop jazz pop reggae other
- 2 How often do you...?
 go to concerts or gigs go dancing
 watch music videos online download music
 look for song lyrics on the internet
- 3 How do you usually listen to music? on the radio online on my phone on CDs
- 4 When you're in a car, what do you prefer listening to? the radio (which station?) my own music nothing
- 5 When do you listen to music?

When I'm exercising.

When I'm travelling on public transport.

When I'm walking around town.

When I'm working or studying.

When I'm relaxing.

- 6 What kind of music do you like listening to when you are...? sad happy
- 7 Are you listening to a particular song or piece of music a lot at the moment?
- 8 Do you sing or play in a group, e.g. a choir or band? What kind of music do you sing or play?

4 **PRONUNCIATION** /j/, giving opinions

a 06.22 Listen to the words and sounds. Then listen and repeat.

	yacht	you yellow young your yoga year
/juː/		music tune new beautiful student

D Hidden /j/ sound

Some words with the /uː/ sound (spelled with u or ew) also have a /j/ sound before the /uː/, e.g. music /ˈmjuːzɪk/ NOT /ˈmuːzɪk/.

b 06.23 Listen and write five phrases.

c 06.24 Listen and repeat the opinions. Then practise saying them. Copy the stress and intonation.

I like him. He's great.

I really like her. She's fantastic.

I don't like them. They're awful.

I don't like it. It's terrible.

d Write the names of six musicians and bands: three you love and three you hate. Then, in pairs, ask your partner What do you think of...?

Male musicians	
Female musicians	<u> </u>
Bands	

5 VIDEO LISTENING

a Read the definition. Do you have buskers where you live? Do you give them money? Why (not)?

busker/'baskə/ *noun* a person who performs music in a public place and asks for money

b Watch the documentary A London busker. Do you think Charlotte likes her job?



- c Watch again and mark the sentences T (true) or F (false). Correct the F sentences.
 - 1 Charlotte only busks in the morning.
 - 2 Buskers usually play pop or folk songs.
 - 3 Buskers can't play anywhere they want to.
 - 4 Charlotte always plays in the same area of London.
 - 5 She only plays other people's songs.
 - 6 Charlotte prefers busking in the summer to busking in the winter.
- d Do you think Charlotte is a good musician? Would you give her money?

6 WRITING

wp.115 Writing An informal email Write an email to a friend.

5&6 Revise and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle	a, b, or c.
1	She the piano.
	a can play b can to play c cans play
2	come tonight?
	a Do you can b You can c Can you
3	A What's that noise? B a party upstairs.
	a They having b They're having c They're have
4	The weather is cold, but raining.
	a it doesn't b it isn't c it not
5	A What doing? B I'm studying for an exam.
	a are you b do you c you are
6	The sun! Let's go for a walk.
_	a shine b shines c is shining
7	The museum at 2.00 on Mondays.
0	a closes b is closing c close
8	A What? B I'm a nurse.
0	a are you doing b do you do c do you
9	Our son always phones every day.
10	a we b us c our
10	Is your sister at home? I need to speak to a him b she c her
11	Do you like housework?
1.1	a doing b do c making
12	I don't mind early.
	a get up b getting up c to get up
13	A hungry? B Yes. What's for dinner?
	a Do you b Have you c Are you
14	What song listening to?
	a are you b do you c you are
15	What time she usually go to bed?

VOCABULARY

a do b is c does

a Complete the phrases with these verbs.

buy run	call take		forget	have	hear	play	
1 _		a no	ise				
2 _		a mu	usical ins	trumen	nt		
3 _		som	ebody's	birthda	ay		
4 _		a pre	esent for	your m	nother		
5 _		som	ebody a	secret			
6 _		а ра	rty				
7 _		a ph	oto				
8 _		a ma	arathon				
9 _		a tax	ci				
0 _		the t	ango				

- **b** Complete the sentences with at, for, in, on, or to.
 - 1 She goes to bed ____ about 11 o'clock.
 - 2 They have their TV ____ very loud.
 - 3 I can't find the keys. Can you look ____ them?
 - 4 I need to talk ____ the doctor.
 - 5 I'm coming! Wait ____ me!
 - 6 My birthday's ____ July.
 - 7 Their wedding is ____ 2nd March.
- c Circle the word that is different.
 - 1 cloudy fog sunny windy
 - 2 cold shine snow rain
 - 3 autumn season spring winter
 - 4 first seven third twelfth
 - 5 twenty-second twenty-five twenty-one twenty-three
 - 6 desert field mountain ring
 - 7 accordion drummer guitar violin
 - 8 busker concert singer trumpeter

PRONUNCIATION

a Practise the words and sounds.

Vowel sounds









bull

boot

train

bike

Consonant sounds









yacht



si<mark>ng</mark>er

thumb m

mother

nose

- b Pp.166-7 Sound Bank Say more words for each sound.
- c What sound do the pink letters have in these words?
 - 1 cook 2 sitting 3 tenth 4 there 5 violin
- **d** Under<u>line</u> the stressed syllable.
 - 1 neigh|bour 3 fif|ti|eth 5 pi|a|nist
 - 2 re|mem|ber 4 sa|xo|phone

CAN YOU understand this text?

- Read the article once. What is your perfect 'wake-up song'?
- Read the article again. Circle a, b, or c.
 - 1 Dr Greenberg's list comes from information from
 - a the internet b his friends c his students
 - 2 One of the things Dr Greenberg doesn't say is important in the song is ____.
 - a the words b the instruments c the singer
 - 3 He says that waking up ____ can help most people feel good all day.
 - a to Coldplay b to the right music
 - c early in the morning
 - 4 ____ doesn't have a wake-up song.
 - a Sandy b Martha c Martin

CAN YOU understand these people?







Tiffany



Stephen



Myles Duncan

- 1 Duncan . a can't play the violin very well
 - b can't play the violin
 - c can play the violin very well
- 2 Myles's neighbours ____ make a noise.
- a always **b** sometimes
- 3 Tiffany's favourite month is
 - a October
 - **b** November
- c December

c never

- 4 Stephen doesn't like ____.
 - **b** country music c the band Wye Oak a opera
- 5 At the moment Dasha is reading
 - a a modern novel
 - a book about French history
 - c a book about the Russian Revolution

CAN YOU say this in English?

Do the tasks with a partner. Tick (\checkmark) the box if you can do these things.

Can you...?

- 1 say two things you can do well, and two things you can't do (e.g. cook)
- 2 say three things you can or can't do in class (e.g. use your mobile)

THE MOMENT I WAKE UP...

Getting up in the morning is hard, but for many people, music seems to help them start the day. There is actually a list of perfect 'wake-up songs' compiled by a psychologist, David M. Greenberg, using data from the music download website, Spotify.

When choosing the perfect 'wake-up songs', Greenberg considered things like how the music builds up, positive lyrics and strong rhythm. He says that the music needs to start gently, and then slowly build up to help people to wake up. It must have positive lyrics to change people's mood from bad to good. The rhythm also needs to be strong,

Greenberg's top choice of song is Viva La Vida, by Coldplay, which has all the three necessary elements, 'Science shows that music affects us in all kinds of ways, including emotionally, physiologically, and in the brain,' he says. 'The right music - like Viva La Vida, with its positive energy and strong momentum - can help you wake up and feel energetic for the rest of your day."

with a lot of bass and drums.

What's your favourite 'wake-up song'? Leave your comments below.

Comments:



Mine is definitely Say a Little Prayer by Aretha Franklin. I always play it first thing in the morning. Sandy



I like getting up to a song by Imagine Dragons, called On Top of the World. I think it fits Dr Greenberg's criteria because it's really positive! Martha



I hate listening to music when I wake up. I prefer listening to the early morning news. Then I can start the day knowing what's happening in the world. Martin

Adapted from a website

- say what kind of books you usually read, and what you are reading at the moment
- ask questions with the words below
 - ...tired?
 - …like watching sport on TV?
 - ...enjoying your English classes?
 - ...play a musical instrument?

He was a famous Who painter. was he?

G past simple of be: was / were V word formation: write → writer P sentence stress

GRAMMAR past simple of be

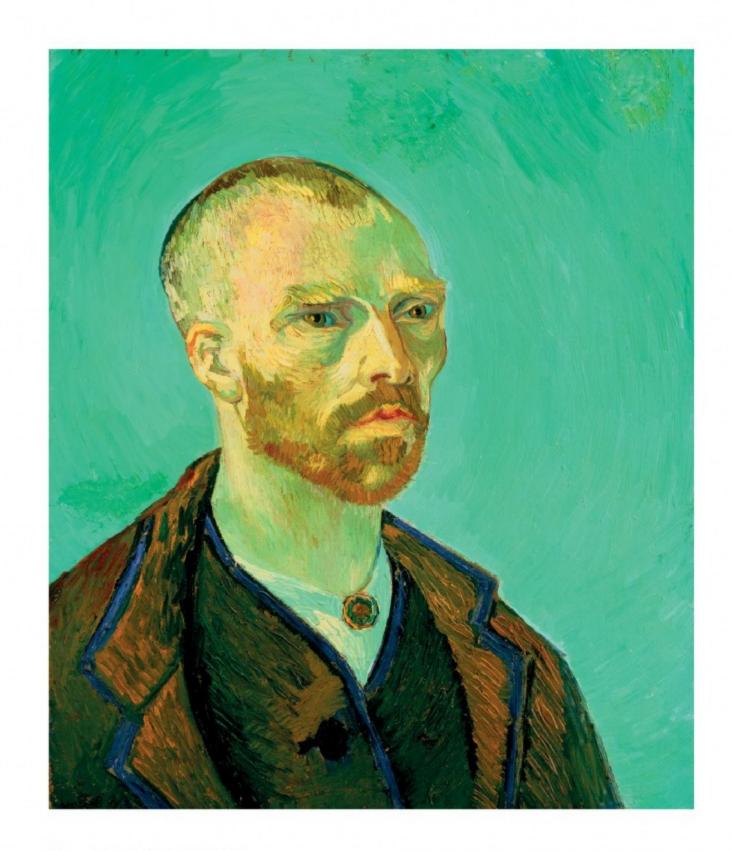
- Look at a self-portrait by a famous painter. Answer the questions.
 - 1 Do you know who he is?
 - 2 How old do you think he is in this painting?
 - 3 Do you know any of his paintings? Do you like them?
- 7.1 Listen to an audio guide. Check your answers to 1 and 2 in a.
- Listen again. Choose a, b, or c.
 - 1 He was born in ____ in 1853. a Belgium b the Netherlands c Germany
 - 2 His parents weren't ____. a artists b married c poor
 - 3 Before he was a painter, he was a _____. a teacher b doctor c lawyer
 - 4 There are ____ photos of him when he was young. a no b a lot of c not many
 - 5 This self-portrait was a present for the painter ____. a Monet b Picasso c Gauguin
 - 6 The relationship between the two painters wasn't _ a bad b easy c complicated
 - 7 He was only ____ when he died. a 27 b 37 c 47
 - 8 During his life, his paintings were _____. a unpopular b valuable c famous
- **d** Look at the **highlighted** verbs in **c**. Complete the chart.

Present	is	are	isn't	aren't
Past				

@p.136 Grammar Bank 7A

PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

- 7.3 Listen and repeat. Copy the rhythm.
 - + He was a **painter**. I was **born** in **!taly**. They were good friends.
 - ☐ He <u>was</u>n't <u>married</u>. They weren't very <u>happy</u>.
 - ? Where were you born? Where was the hotel? Was it expensive? No, it wasn't. Were they at the **concert? Yes**, they **were**.
- 7.4 Listen. Say the sentences in the past simple.
 - 1)) I'm at home. (I was at home.



READING

- Look at three self-portraits on p.55. Do you think the self-portraits look like the people in the photos?
- Read the three biographies and number the events in the correct order, 1-3.

Kurt Vonnegut

- Slaughterhouse-Five was a bestseller.
- He was a soldier.
- He was a painter.

Billy Dee Williams

- He was in his first film.
- He was very successful as an actor.
- He was an art student.

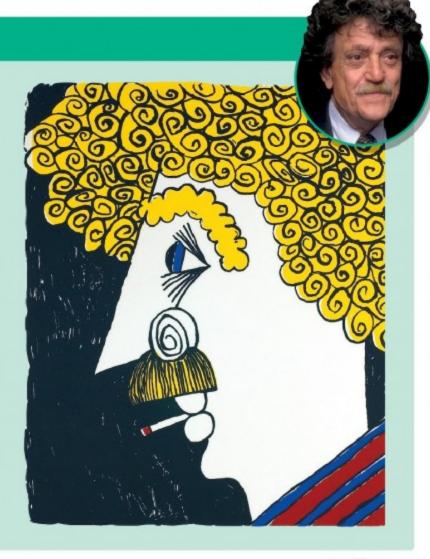
Adele

- She wasn't very interested in schoolwork.
- 19 was a bestseller.
- She was a student with singer Jessie J.
- Read the biographies again. Then cover them. What can you remember about each person?
- Which of the four self-portraits in this lesson do you like most? Why?

Kurt Vonnegut

Kurt Vonnegut was an American writer. He was born in 1922 in Indianapolis. He was a soldier during World War II,

- os and was in a prison camp in Germany from 1944 to 1945. His first novel was *Piano Player*, published in 1952, but it wasn't a success. However, his novel
- Slaughterhouse-Five, an antiwar book, was a best-seller, and was made into a film in 1972.
 In later life, he was interested in politics and painting. His art
 was an escape from the 'work'



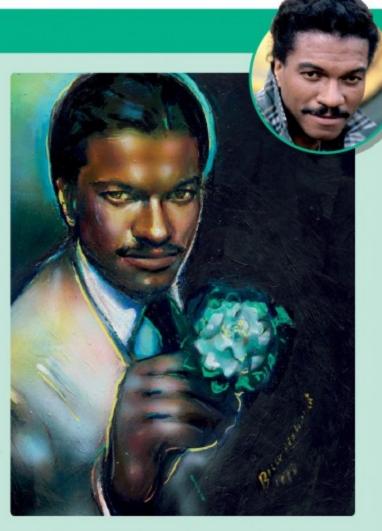
digi ZABAN

Billy Dee Williams

of writing.

Billy Dee Williams is an American actor. He was born in New York in 1937. His father was a caretaker and his mother was a lift operator. He was a student at the High School of Music & Art. He was a

- theatre actor for 15 years, and in 1959 he was in his first film. He 25 was very successful in the 1980s, when he was in two Star Wars films, The Empire Strikes Back and Return of the Jedi. Before he was an actor, Williams was at a fine arts
- 30 academy in New York, and this selfportrait is in the National Portrait Gallery in Washington D.C.



Adele

Adele is a British singer and songwriter. She was born Adele

- 35 Laurie Blue Adkins in London in 1988. When she was a child she was much more interested in music than in schoolwork. When she was 14, her musical tastes
- 40 were very different from most teenagers – she was a big fan of Billie Holiday and Eminem. She was a performing arts student at the BRIT School in London,
- where she was a classmate of singers Leona Lewis and Jessie J. Her first album, 19, in 2008, was an immediate success and she is now a major star. Adele
- 50 isn't a painter; this self-portrait was for an online art project called Face Britain.



4 VOCABULARY word formation

a Find words in the biographies for people's jobs made from these verbs.

1	write	3	sing	
2	act		paint	

Word building: professions

We often add -er or -or to a verb, e.g. writer, actor.

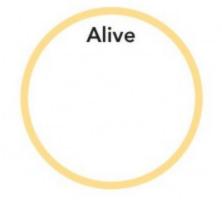
We often add -ian, or -ist to a noun, e.g. musician, pianist.

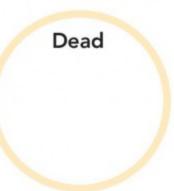
- b Look at the two groups below. Are the words verbs or nouns? Can you make the words for the jobs?
 - 1 compose dance direct invent
 - 2 art novel politics science
- c ①7.5 Listen and check. Under<u>line</u> the stressed syllable. Practise saying the words.
- d Write the names of four famous people in each circle. Then change circles. Ask a partner about the people in his / her circles.

Who's Sia? (She's an Australian singer.

Who was Charles Darwin?)

(He was a British scientist.





5 SPEAKING

Talk to a partner.

Do you ever take selfies?



Do you have any on your phone?

Where were you?

When was it?

Who were you with?



Why don't you take them?

Why do you think other people take them?

Do any of your friends and family take them?

Do you have any photos of you on your phone that are not selfies? Where were you?

Wrong name, wrong place

Where did they want to go?

They wanted to go to Trinidad.

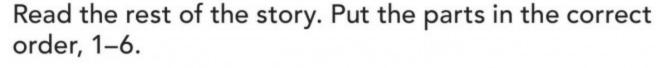
G past simple: regular verbs **V** past time expressions **P** -ed endings

READING & LISTENING

- Read the beginning of a true story about a problem with a flight. Answer the questions.
 - 1 Where did Adam and India want to fly to? Where from?
 - 2 Who booked the tickets?
 - 3 What problem do you think there was with the booking?







- ...to pay £220, so he decided to change his surname to West. It was free to change his name, but then he needed a new passport with his new name. The new passport...
- B 1 Unfortunately it wasn't the right name - 'Adam West' is the name of an actor who played Batman in the 1960s. Adam...
- C ...that it was possible, but he needed to pay £220 - double the cost of the flight. He didn't want...
- D ...used the name on his Facebook page as a joke. His real name is Adam Armstrong. When Adam...
- E ...realized the mistake, he phoned Ryanair. He asked them to change the surname on his booking. Ryanair replied...
- F ...was £103 - so Adam saved £117. And he and India travelled to Ibiza on 11th June.

Adapted from the British press

Do you think Adam's solution was a good one? Why (not)?

- You're going to listen to another true story. Before you listen, read sentences A–G and put them in a logical order, 1–7.
 - A They tried to check in.
 - Kevin booked the flights.
 - 1 C Kevin and Jeanette wanted to go on holiday to the Caribbean.
 - D They parked their car.
 - E They arrived at Birmingham Airport.
 - F They looked for flights online.
 - G They walked into the terminal.
- 7.6 Now listen to the first part of the story. Was your order in **d** correct?
- 7.7 Listen to the end of the story. What was the problem?
- Whose fault was the problem in each story?



- 2 GRAMMAR past simple: regular verbs
- a Find the past tense of these verbs in **1b**. Write them in the chart.

	Present	Past
1	ask	
2	decide	
3	reply	
4	don't want	

b ①7.8 Listen to an extract from the second story. What's the missing word?

Kevin, _____ you check the airport when you booked?

- d Stand up and move around the class. Ask Did you...? questions about yesterday with the verb phrases below. When somebody answers Yes, I did., write their name.

YESTERDAY

Find a person who...

watched football on TV
called a taxi
studied for an exam
 cooked dinner
arrived at work / school late
listened to the radio
started a new book
 worked / studied until late
played a computer or video game

Did you watch football on TV yesterday?)

(No, I didn't. Did you call a taxi...?

3 PRONUNCIATION -ed endings

Past simple regular verbs

The e in -ed is not usually pronounced, and -ed is pronounced /d/ or /t/, e.g. closed /kləuzd/, stopped /stopt/.

The -ed is pronounced /ɪd/ only in verbs which end with the sound /t/ or /d/, e.g. wait – waited /ˈweɪtɪd/, decide – decided /dɪˈsaɪdɪd/.

a **107.10** Listen and repeat the sentences.

1 -ed = I called a taxi. I used an app. It arrived in five minutes.
 2 -ed = We talked about a holiday. We looked online. We booked a hotel.
 3 -ed = /Id/ He needed a passport. He wanted it fast. He waited a long time.

asked cooked ended finished liked lived painted played started stopped travelled watched worked

- - 1)) play tennis (I didn't play tennis yesterday.

4 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING

past time expressions

- a Number the past time expressions 1-10.
 - yesterday morning last week last night last summer the day before yesterday three days ago a year ago 1 five minutes ago 10 in 2017
 - Past time expressions
 We say last week, last month
 NOT the last week, the last month.
- b 07.13 Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.
- c Complete the sentence for each activity with a past time expression.

When was the last time?

I travelled by bus	I booked some tickets
I posted a photo online	I downloaded a song
I walked more than 5 km	I played sport
I watched a really good film	I danced at a party
I arrived late for something	

d Work in pairs. A tell your partner your first sentence.
 B ask for more information.

I travelled by bus this morning.) (Where to?

Happy New Year?

What did We went you do? to a party.

G past simple: irregular verbs **V** go, have, get **P** sentence stress

READING

- When is New Year's Eve? Is it an important celebration in your country?
- Read three stories. Who had...?
 - a great evening
 - · an OK evening
 - a terrible evening
- Read the stories again. Complete the sentences with A (Andy), J (Jenny), or M (Mina).
 - 1 ____ was outside at midnight.
 - 2 ____ didn't know exactly when midnight was.
 - 3 ____ was alone at midnight.
 - 4 ____ was at work at midnight.
 - heard the celebrations, but didn't see them.
 - 6 ____ was surprised by something people did.
- How do people celebrate New Year's Eve in your country? Do you think most people enjoy it? Why (not)?

GRAMMAR past simple: irregular verbs

With a partner, find the past tense of these irregular verbs in the stories.

buy	bought	/boxt/
can		/kod/
come		/keim/
drink	- <u>-</u>	/dræŋk/
feel		/felt/
find	- <u> </u>	/faund/
get		/gpt/
go		/went/
have		/hæd/
know		/njuː/
put on		/put on/
say		/sed/
take		/tuk/
think		/trce/
wear		/wor/

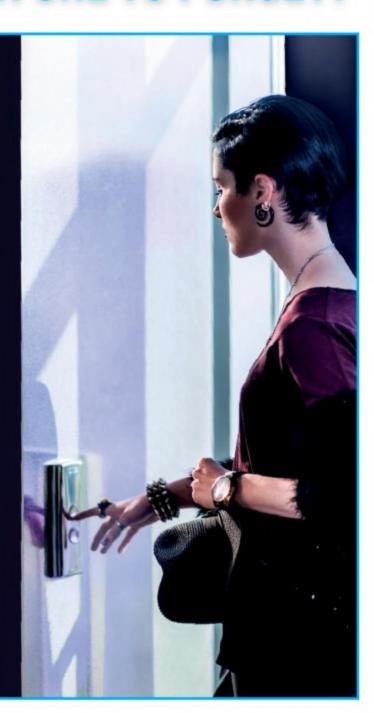
- 7.14 Listen and check. Practise saying the verbs.
- **G** p.136 **Grammar Bank 7C**

NEW YEAR'S EVE -

ONE TO REMEMBER OR ONE TO FORGET?

MINA This was last year, and I went to a hotel with some friends. It had a bar on the top floor, and that's where the party was. We got there at about 11.00.

- 05 About half an hour before midnight I realized I didn't have my phone – it was in my car. So I took the lift down to the car park. I found my phone, and then I got back into the lift - I was the
- only person in it. But then, between the third and fourth floors, the lift stopped completely and I couldn't get out. I pressed the button and asked for help, but a guy said there was an electrical
- 15 fault and I needed to wait. Then a few minutes later, I could hear people outside celebrating. It was awful -I didn't get out until almost 1.00 in the morning. And on top of it all, my friends 20 didn't realize that I wasn't there!





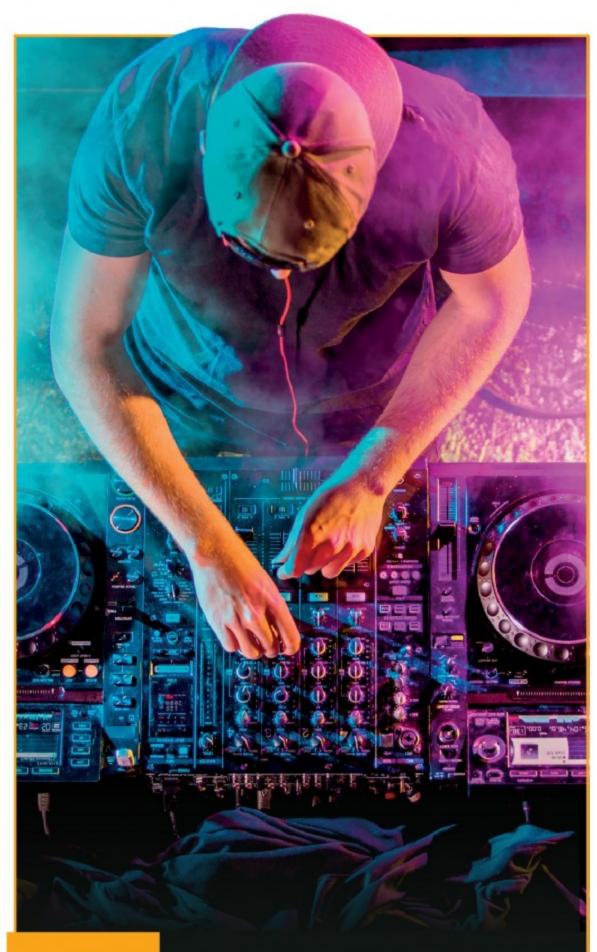
I had a fantastic New Year's Eve in Iceland in 2013. First, we went to a really expensive restaurant for dinner. It was early, about 6.00, because that's when people have dinner in Iceland. I wore a lovely dress, but after dinner we got a taxi back to the hotel and I put on boots and a warm jacket. Then we went out and watched the amazing fireworks. Suddenly, at about 10.00, everyone went home to watch TV – there's this famous programme they always watch on New Year's Eve! It was really strange – the streets were empty for a bit. But then just before midnight people came out again and danced and drank till about 5.00 in the morning. It was incredible.

3 VOCABULARY go, have, get

a Can you remember these phrases? Write went, had, or got.

1	1	to a hotel with some friends
2	lt	_ a bar on the top floor.
3	We	there at about 11.00.
4	1	a fantastic New Year's Eve.
5	We	to a really expensive
	restaurant.	
6	We	a taxi back to the hotel.

b Vp.160 Vocabulary Bank go, have, get



ANDY
I'm a DJ, and this happened to me
a few years ago. It was my first time at a New
Year's Eve party, and I planned all the music
really carefully. I knew exactly which tracks I was
going to play. The first part of the night was fine,

- but just when I thought it was time to start the countdown to midnight, I saw that people were all at the bar, not on the dance floor, and the TVs were on. On the screens I could see fireworks, and Big Ben! I looked at my watch and I realized
- it was about two minutes slow! I felt really stupid. I bought a new watch the next day!

4 LISTENING

a ①7.17 Listen to Denisa from Slovakia talk about a memorable New Year's Eve. Where was Denisa at midnight?



b Can you remember what she says about these people and things?

1	Marcelo	5	Copacabana
2	white clothes	6	a show
3	Marcelo's mother	7	nearly midnight

4 dinner 8 a swim at Praia do Arpoador

c Listen again and check.

d Would you like to spend New Year's Eve in Rio? Is there anywhere else in the world you'd like to spend it?

5 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

a Look at the questions. What words are missing?

A memorable New Year's Eve

1	What year	it?
2	Where	you?
3	Who	with?
4	Where	have dinner?
5	What	wear?
6	What	do before midnight?
7	What	do at midnight?
8	What	do after midnight?
9	How	the weather?
10	What time	go to bed?
11		have a good time?

b <a>07.18 Listen and repeat the questions. <a>Copy the <a>rhythm.

6 SPEAKING & WRITING

- a Think about a time when you had a memorable New Year's Eve. Look at the questions in 5a and plan your answers. Add all the extra information you can.
- **b** Interview each other about your New Year's Eve.
- Write about your New Year's Eve. Answer the questions in
 5a, and use the stories in 1 to help you.

Practical English Getting lost

asking the way

V directions

1 A FREE MORNING



a **17.19** Watch or listen to Rob and Jenny planning their free morning. What's the problem?



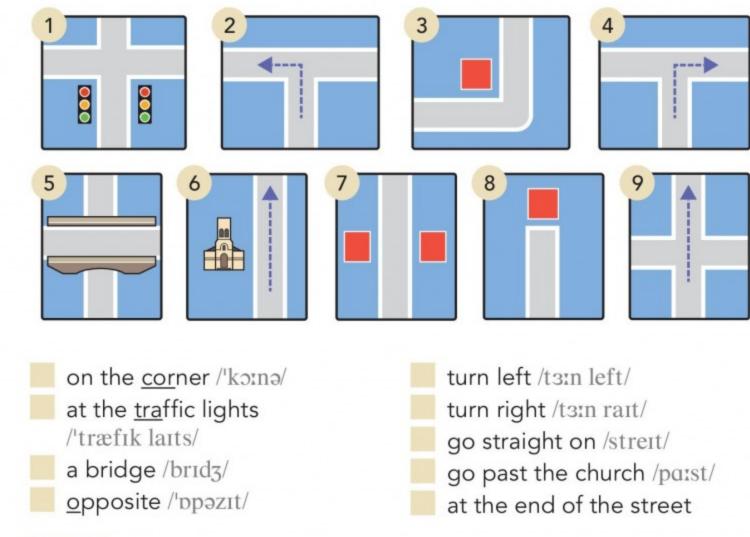
- b Watch or listen again. Complete the sentences with a word, a name, or a number.
 - 1 Rob suggests that they go ______.
 - 2 He says that they can _____ bikes.
 - 3 _____ phones ____.
 4 Rob needs to interview an _____.
 - 5 Rob asks if he can do the interview
 - on ______.
 - 6 Rob and Jenny arrange to meet at o'clock outside the Tate Modern.

Glossary

(the) Tate Modern a famous art gallery in London

2 **VOCABULARY** directions

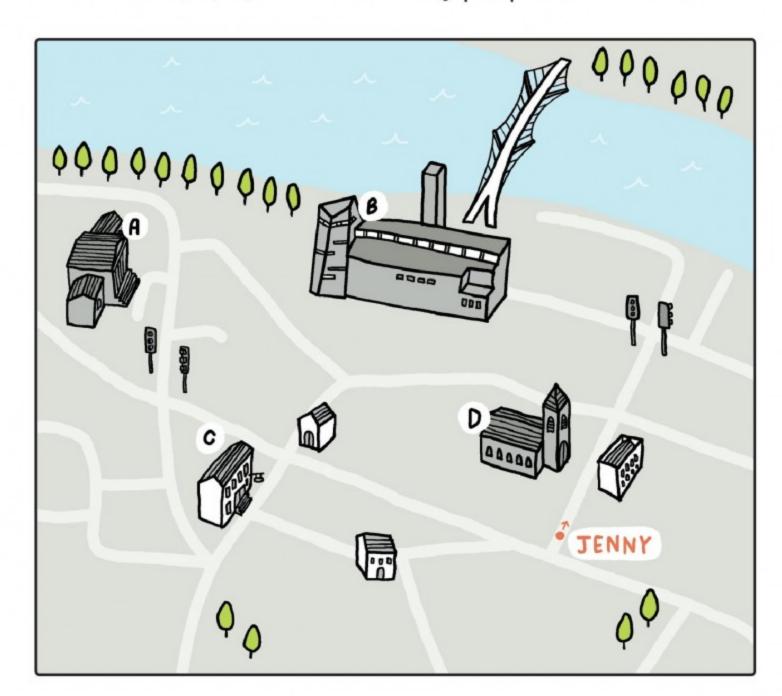
a Match the phrases and pictures.



- **b 107.20** Watch or listen and check.
- c Cover the phrases and look at the pictures. Say the phrases.

3 ASKING THE WAY

a ①7.21 Jenny is trying to find the Tate Modern. Watch or listen. Is it A, B, C, or D? How many people does she ask?





b Watch or listen again. Complete the You hear phrases.

You say	You hear
Excuse me, please. Where's the Tate Modern?	¹ , I don't live here.
Excuse me. Is the Tate Modern near here?	The Tate Modern? It's near here, but I don't know exactly 2 Sorry.
Thank you.	
Excuse me. Can you tell me the way to the Tate Modern, please?	Yes, of course. Go straight on. Go 3 the church, then turn 4 at the traffic lights. And it's at the end of the street.
Sorry, could you say that again, please?	Yes, go straight onYou can't 5 it!
Thank you.	

- c **37.22** Watch or listen and repeat the **You say** phrases. Copy the <u>rhy</u>thm.
- **d** Practise the conversation with a partner.
 - Can you...? or Could you...?

 Can you tell me the way to the
 Tate Modern?

 Could you say that again, please?

 We can use Can you...? or Could
 you...? when we want to ask another
 person to do something. Could you...?
 is more polite.
- e in pairs, role-play the conversation.

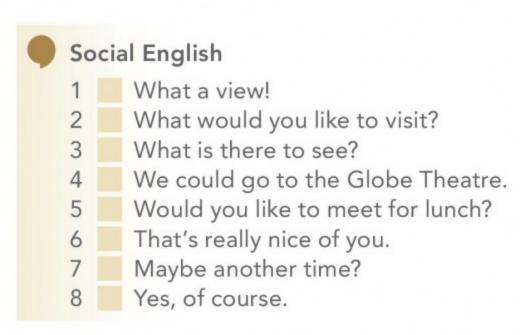
You are where Jenny is.

- A Ask for directions to building A (the library). Begin Excuse me, where's....
- **B** Give directions. Then change roles. **B** ask for directions to building C (the post office).

digi ZABAN

4 D JENNY AND ROB GO SIGHTSEEING

- a **107.23** Watch or listen to Rob and Jenny. Circle the correct option.
 - 1 The Millennium / London Bridge is only for people.
 - 2 It was the first new bridge over the Thames in 100 / 200 years.
 - 3 Jenny doesn't like the theatre / Shakespeare.
 - 4 Jenny can / can't meet Daniel for lunch.
 - 5 There's a great gift shop / restaurant on the top floor of the Tate Modern.
 - 6 The Tate Modern was a power / train station until 1981.
- b Look at the Social English phrases. Who says them: Jenny, Rob, or Daniel?



- c 07.24 Watch or listen and check. Then watch or listen and repeat.
- d Complete conversations A–H with **Social English** phrases 1–8. Practise with a partner.

Α	What can we do this afternoon?	I love Shakespeare!	
В	We have all day in Oxford.	I'd like to see the colleges and the High Street.	
C Let's	go to the Tate Modern.	It's closed today.	
D	What are you doing at midday?	Yes, I'd love to.	
E	I can see St Paul's cathedral.	Yes, and the London Eye's over there.	
F	Can you tell me the way to Victoria Station?	Go straight down there and turn left.	
G	I hear the British Museum is great.	At the moment there's a new exhibition about the Greeks.	
Н	Would you like to go out tonight?	But I'm afraid I'm busy tonight.	

CAN YOU...?

- ask for and understand directions
 - give simple directions
 - ask somebody to do something in a polite way



A murder mystery

Did you love your husband?

No. But I didn't kill him.

G past simple: regular and irregular **V** irregular verbs

P past simple verbs

READING

Read about the Travers murder and look at the photos of the victim and the suspects. Then cover the text and look at the photos. Can you remember who the people are?

Who's Amanda?) (She's Jeremy's wife.

- 3.1 Read and listen to the story. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false). Correct the F sentences.
 - 1 Somebody killed Jeremy between 11.00 p.m. and 7.00 a.m.
 - 2 The inspector questioned Amanda in the living room.
 - 3 Jeremy went to bed before Amanda.
 - 4 Amanda and Jeremy slept in the same room.
 - 5 Somebody opened and closed Amanda's door.
 - 6 Amanda got up at 7.00.
 - 7 Amanda didn't love Jeremy.

Inspector Granger arrived at about 9.00. He ¹ was a tall man with a big moustache. Amanda, Barbara, Claudia, and Gordon ² were in the living room. The inspector ³ came in.

'Mr Travers died between midnight last night and 7.00 this morning,' he 4 said. 'Somebody in this room killed him.' He looked at them one by one, but nobody ⁵ spoke.

'Mrs Travers, I want to talk to you first. Come into the library with me, please.'

Amanda followed the inspector into the library and they ⁶ sat down.

'What did your husband do after dinner last night?'

'We finished dinner at about 9.30. Then Jeremy said he was tired and he ⁷went to bed.'

'Did you go to bed then?'

'No, I didn't. I went for a walk in the garden.'

'What time did you go to bed?'

'About quarter to twelve.'

'Was your husband asleep?'

'I don't know, Inspector. We...we ⁸slept in different rooms. But I 9 saw that his door was closed.'

'Did you hear anything when you were in your room?'

'Yes, I 10 heard Jeremy's bedroom door. It opened. I 11 thought it was Jeremy. Then it closed again. I 12 read in bed for half an hour and then I went to sleep.'

'What time did you get up this morning?'

'I 13 got up at about 7.15. I 14 had breakfast and at 8.00 I 15 took a cup of tea to my husband. I 16 found him in bed. He was...dead.'

'Tell me, Mrs Travers, did you love your husband?'

'Jeremy is...was a difficult man.'

'But did you love him, Mrs Travers?'

'No, Inspector. I hated him.'

The Travers, murder

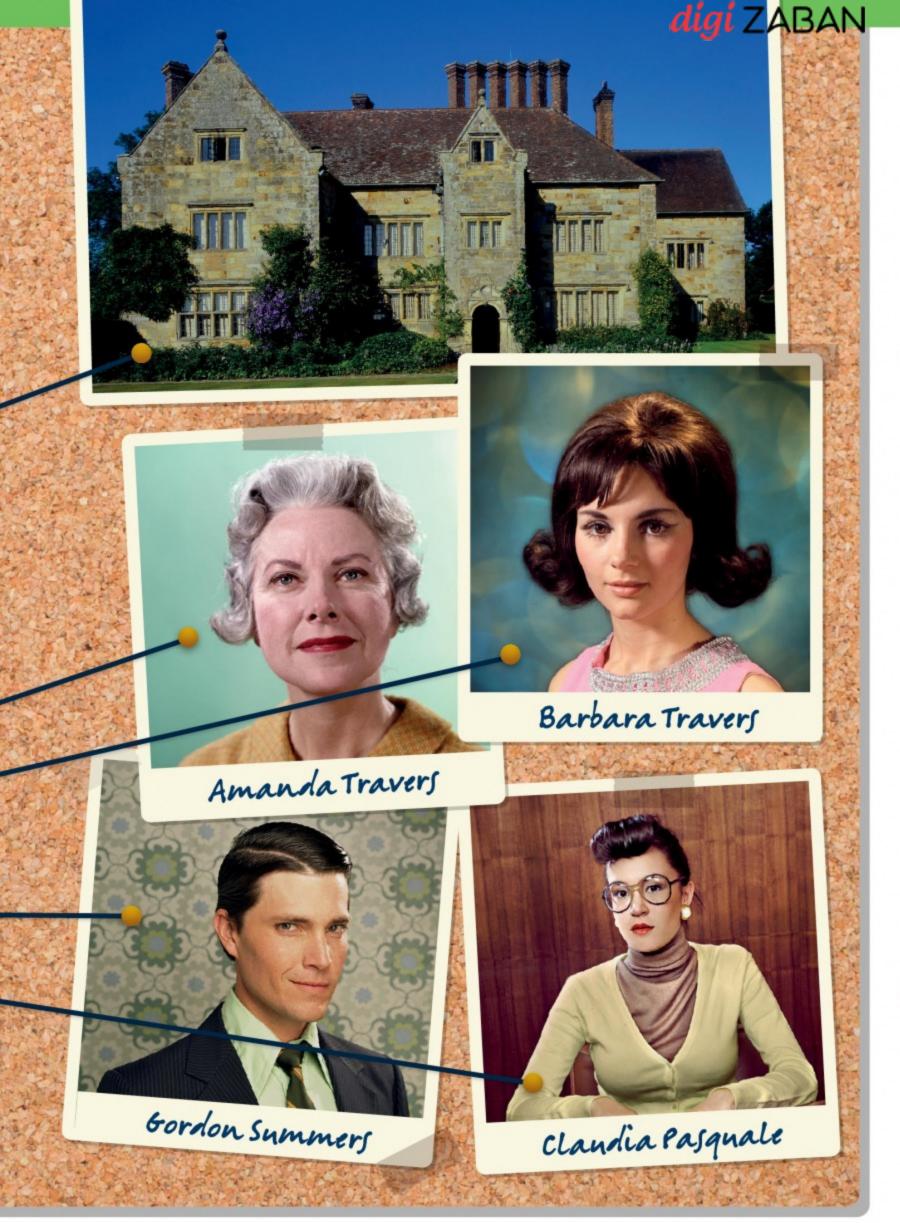
- June 22nd 1965 Jeremy Travers's 60th birthday
- He had dinner at his country house with:
 - Amanda, his wife
 - Barbara, his daughter
 - Gordon, his business partner
- Claudia, his secretary.
- Next morning, Amanda Travers went to her husband's bedroom. She found him dead.



The victim, Jeremy Travers

PRONUNCIATION past simple verbs

- Look at the highlighted irregular verbs in the story. What are the infinitives?
 - 2 be were 1 be – was
 - 3 come came
- 3.2 Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.
- 10 8.3 Find and <u>underline</u> nine past simple positive regular verbs in the story. How do you pronounce them? Listen and check. Then listen and repeat the verbs and phrases.
 -)) arrived (Inspector Granger arrived.



- b Compare your chart with a partner. Who do you think was the murderer: Amanda, Barbara, Gordon, or Claudia? Why?
- c ①8.7 Now listen to what happened. Who was the murderer? Why did he / she kill Mr Travers? Were you right?

4 GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY past simple: regular and irregular

Are they regular or irregular in the past simple? Write the past simple form ± and = for each verb.

arrive close come hate kill sit sleep speak

arrive arrived didn't arrive

- b \(\mathbb{O} \) 8.8 Listen and check.
- c @p.138 Grammar Bank 8A
- d p.165 Irregular verbs Tick (✓) the irregular verbs you know. Choose three new ones and learn them.

5 SPEAKING

What time did you get home? About 11.30.

Communication Police interview A p.106 B p.111 Interview robbery suspects. Are they telling the truth?

3 LISTENING

a ①8.4, 8.5, 8.6 Listen to part of the TV adaptation. The inspector questions Barbara. Write the information in the chart. Listen again and check. Then do the same for Gordon and Claudia.

	Amanda	Barbara	Gordon	Claudia
What did he / she do after dinner?	She went for a walk.			
What time did he / she go to bed?	11.45.			
Did he / she hear anything?	Jeremy's door opened and closed.			
Did he / she have a motive?	She hated him.			



A house with a history

Is there a No, there dishwasher? isn't.

G there is / there are, some / any + plural nouns V the house P /ea/ and /ɪa/

VOCABULARY the house

- Read the advertisement. Would you like to rent this house? Why (not)?
- Cover the advertisement. What can you remember about the house?
- With a partner, think of three things you usually find in a bedroom, a bathroom, and a living room.
- Vp.161 Vocabulary Bank The house

LISTENING

- 1 8.11 Kim and Leo are a young couple from the USA. They want to rent the house in 1. Cover the conversation and listen. Which three rooms in the house do they go into?
- Listen again and complete the conversation.

K The garden's wonderful, I lo	ve	it	
--------------------------------	----	----	--

- L Is there a ¹ garage ?
- B Oh yes, there's a big garage over there.
- K You lived in this house, is that right, Mrs...?
- B Miss Travers. But call me Barbara, dear. Yes, I lived here. A long time ago. Now I live in the village. Let's go inside the house...

This is the 2 . It's a lovely room, very light. And this is the library...

- L Wow! There's a library, Kim!
- K I love the furniture, the old sofa, the armchairs, the 3
- B And this is the 4_____. It's very big, as you can see.
- K Is there a dishwasher?
- B No, there isn't. It's an old house, you see.
- L Never mind. I think it's lovely. Is there a 5_ downstairs?
- B Yes, there's one 6_____ and there are three upstairs.
- ____ with children? K Are there any 7_
- B No, there aren't any neighbours near here. But there are some families with children in the village.
- K That's great. We have two children.
- B Very nice, dear. Now let's go 8_
- 10 8.12 Listen. What does Kim say about one of the bedrooms? Whose bedroom was it? Do they decide to rent the house?

TO RENT

Beautiful country house. Very quiet. Six bedrooms, four bathrooms, large garden. Five miles from Oxford. Perfect family house. Low price.





digi ZABAN



d ①8.13 Kim and Leo go to the local pub. Listen and complete extracts 1–6 from their conversation. What do you think they find out?

Kim	Cheers. To our ne	ew ¹
Leo	Is something ²	?
Barman	Some people ³ _one that did it.	that she was the
Barman	Didn't she ⁴	you?
Kim	Tell us ⁵	_?
Kim	Oh, how 6	!

- e ①8.14 Now listen to the whole conversation. What do Kim and Leo decide to do in the end? Why?
- 3 GRAMMAR there is / there are, some / any + plural nouns
- a In groups of three, practise the conversation in 2b. Then complete the chart.

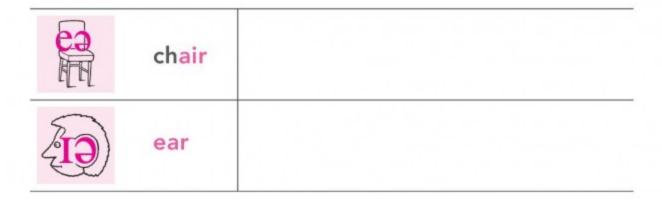
singular	plural
+ There's a library.	There some families in the village.
There a dishwasher.	There aren't any neighbours.
a garage?	any neighbours?

- **b** What's the difference between...?
 - 1 There are **three** families in the village.
 - 2 There are **some** families in the village.
- c **G**p.138 **Grammar Bank 8B**
- d Communication Is there...? Are there...?

 A p.106 B p.111 Ask and answer questions.

4 PRONUNCIATION /ea/ and /ɪa/

a **38.16** Listen to the words and sounds. Then listen and repeat.



b Put the words in the correct row.

there	here	beer	careful	dear	wear
they're	near	stairs	we're	hear	where

- c ①8.17 Listen and check. Then listen and repeat. Which three pairs are pronounced the same?
- d @8.18 Listen and write six sentences or questions.

5 SPEAKING

a Imagine you want to rent a house or flat. Interview a partner. Ask for and give more information if you can.

```
Is it a house or a flat?

How old is it?

How big is it?

How many | bedrooms bathrooms | are there?

| a study? | a garden or a balcony? | a garage? | central heating or air conditioning?
```

b Draw a simple plan of one room. Show the plan to your partner and describe the room.

This is the living room. It's quite big and it's very light. There are two sofas and an armchair.

6 WRITING

wp.116 Writing Describing your home Write a description of your house or flat for a website.

Room 333

Were there any ghosts?

No, but there was a strange noise.

G there was / there were V prepositions: place and movement P silent letters

READING & LISTENING

- Do you believe in ghosts? Are there buildings in your town / city that people think are haunted?
- Read a newspaper article about The Langham, a hotel in London. With a partner, answer questions 1–5.
 - 1 What famous people stayed in The Langham?
 - 2 Which film did the hotel appear in?
 - 3 What did the journalist see in 1973?
 - 4 What sometimes happens in room 333 when guests are asleep?
 - 5 What happened to a player in the English cricket team?

1 8.19 Listen to two guests at the hotel. Did they see a ghost?

Listen again. Who did these things happen to? Tick (✓) the correct column(s).

The woman The man

- knew about the ghosts in the hotel.
- woke up during the night.
- heard strange noises.
- felt frightened when he / she heard the noises.
- complained to Reception.
- wrote to the hotel after getting home.
- only stayed at the hotel for one night.
- doesn't want to stay at the hotel again.
- Complete the sentences from the article and the listening. What do the verb phrases mean?
 - 1 The journalist got _____ and ran.
 - 2 Suddenly the taps in the bathroom turned
 - 3 We woke _____ at about 5.30 in the morning.
 - 4 The noises stopped and we went _____ to sleep.
 - 5 We checked _____ of the hotel the same morning.
- Would you like to stay in The Langham in room 333? Why (not)?

Would you like TO STAY IN ROOM 333?

Britain is well-known for having houses and hotels with ghosts, but did you know there was one in central London?

The Langham is a famous London hotel situated between Hyde Park and Regent's Park and opposite the BBC. The hotel was built in 1865 and has 380 rooms. In the past, many famous people stayed at the hotel, including the Duke of Windsor, Napoleon III, and the Irish writer Oscar Wilde. Sir Arthur Conan Doyle, who wrote the Sherlock Holmes stories, also stayed there, and The Langham appears in some of the stories. More recently, the hotel appeared in a James Bond film, GoldenEye.

The Langham has the reputation of being haunted, especially room 333. People say the hotel has several ghosts, including a Victorian 15 doctor who murdered his wife and then killed himself. He appears on the third floor and in room 333. In 1973, a well-known BBC journalist

woke up suddenly in the night and saw 'the shape of a man wearing Victorian evening 20 clothes floating towards him'. The journalist got up and ran. Other ghosts also like room 333. A German prince who jumped out of a fourth floor window walks through the door in the early morning, and another ghost moves the bed when the guests are asleep.

When the English cricket team stayed at the hotel, players reported that some very strange things happened during the night. One of the players told the Daily Mail newspaper, 'It was very 30 hot in the room and I couldn't sleep. Suddenly the taps in the bathroom turned on. I turned the lights on and the taps turned off. Then when I turned the lights off, the taps turned on again.

It was very strange.'

GRAMMAR there was / there were

38.20 Complete the sentences from the listening with was, wasn't, were, or weren't. Then listen and check.

1 There _____ a strange noise outside our door. 2 There _____ any more strange noises. 3 We knew that people said there _____ ghosts. 4 There _____ anybody in that room last night.

Gp.138 Grammar Bank 8C

VOCABULARY prepositions: place and movement

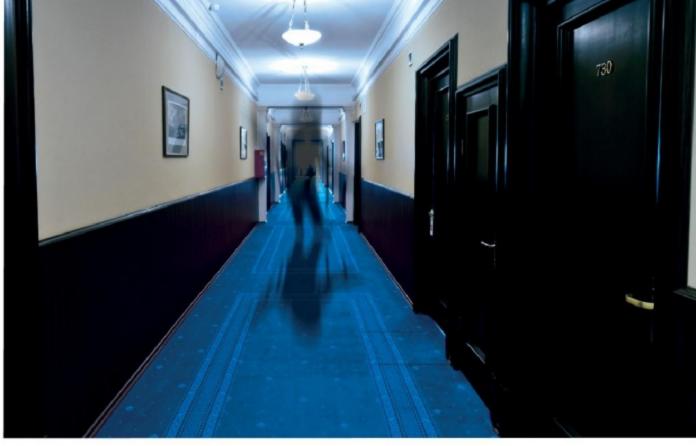
Read two sentences from the text. Complete with the correct prepositions.

1 A Victorian doctor appears _____ room 333.

2 A German prince walks _____ the door in the early morning.

b V p.162 Vocabulary Bank Prepositions





PRONUNCIATION silent letters

Silent letters

Some English words have a silent letter, e.g. in ghost /gəust/ you don't pronounce the h.

1 8.24 Listen and cross out the silent letter in these words.

could cupboard friend guest half hour island know listen talk what write

b Practise saying the words.

SPEAKING

Was there a TV?) (No, there wasn't.

Communication Room 333 A p.106 B p.111 Look at a photo of room 333. Remember what there was in the room.

VIDEO LISTENING



- a Watch the documentary A haunted castle about the four ghosts of Portchester Castle. How many of them are frightening?
- Watch again and complete the sentences.

1 Portcheste	r Castle is more than	years old.
--------------	-----------------------	------------

- 2 The castle is part of a charity called _ Heritage.
- 3 Some workers at the castle leave their jobs because
- 4 The ghost of a Roman _____ guards the walls of the castle.
- 5 The ghost of a monk disappears when people at him.
- 6 The White Lady is the ghost of a woman who died when she tried to save her _____.
- 7 One of the staff who saw the ghost of the man on a horse screamed and ran _____.
- 8 One visitor to the castle heard the sound of on the video that he filmed.
- Would you like to visit Portchester Castle and see a ghost?

88 Revise and Check

GRAMMAR

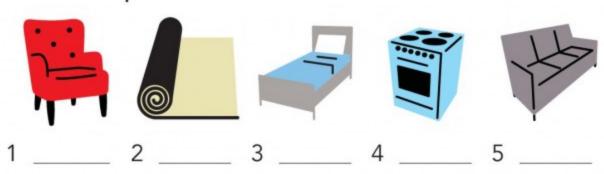
Circle	a, b, or c.
1	Van Gogh and Gauguin both painters.
	a was b were c is
2	Where Shakespeare born?
	a was b were c is
3	the tickets expensive?
	a Was b Were c Did
4	I a good film on TV last night.
	a watched b watch c watches
5	They at the right airport.
	a didn't arrived b don't arrived c didn't arrive
6	you see the football match last night?
	a Did b Do c Were
7	We to Istanbul three years ago.
0	a go b were c went
8	When in Los Angeles?
0	a you lived b did you lived c did you live
9	I you at the party last night.
10	a didn't saw b didn't see c don't saw
10	What time home? a did you get b you did get c you got
11	
1.1	a big table in the living room. a There are b There is c It is
12	How many bedrooms?
12	a there are b are there c are they
13	There aren't pictures on the walls.
10	a any b some c a
14	only three guests in the dining room.
	a There was b There were c There is
15	How many people in the hotel?
	a there were b was there c were there

VOCABULARY

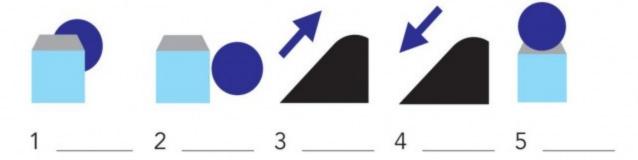
- Complete the professions with -er, -or, -ian, or -ist.
 - 1 act____ 2 art____ 3 paint____ 4 music____
 - 5 scient
 - 5 scient___
- b Complete the phrases with go, have, or get.

1	a good time
2	an email
3	away for the weekend
4	a taxi
5	a holiday

- c Complete the sentences with back, by, in, out, or to.
 - 1 I went _____ with my friends on Saturday night.2 They went home _____ car.
 - 3 What time did you get _____ the restaurant?
 - 4 I was born _____ 1995.
 - 5 After lunch I went _____ to work.
- d Label the pictures.



e Write the prepositions.



PRONUNCIATION

a Practise the words and sounds.

Vowel sounds









ear

chair

phone

horse

Consonant sounds



dog









- b Pp.166-7 Sound Bank Say more words for each sound.
- c What sound do the pink letters have in these words?
 - 1 hall 2 here 3 lived 4 looked 5 there
- **d** Under<u>line</u> the stressed syllable.
 - 1 sci|en|tist 3 yes|ter|day 5 fire|place 2 a|go 4 be|tween



CAN YOU understand this text?

- a Read the article once. Do you have any favourite detectives or detective writers?
- Read the article again. Mark the sentences
 T (true) or F (false).
 - 1 Gillian Flynn and Lee Child are modern crime writers.
 - 2 Sherlock Holmes only appeared in short stories.
 - 3 Agatha Christie's novels were similar to older crime fiction.
 - 4 She wanted her readers to try to solve the crimes themselves.
 - 5 If you read detective fiction from the 19th and early 20th century, you can learn about how people thought and behaved.
 - 6 Not many people now enjoy Dorothy Sayers's books.

How the modern detective novel was born

Millions of readers, like me, love the books of Gillian Flynn and Ruth Rendell, of Lee Child and Laura Lippman. But most fans of modern crime fiction know very little about the writers who invented the modern detective novel.

Many of the best early detective stories were short stories. Edgar Allan Poe (1809–1849) was probably the author of the first detective story. Arthur Conan Doyle (1859–1930) created perhaps the most famous detective, Sherlock Holmes. Father Brown was also a detective who was nearly as popular as Holmes; he was created by G.K. Chesterton (1874–1936). Father Brown only appeared in short stories, and Sherlock Holmes appeared in over 50 short stories and only four novels, including *The Hound of the Baskervilles*, where he solves the mystery of an enormous ghost dog.

In 1916, in her book *The Mysterious Affair at Styles*, Agatha Christie introduced a new type of detective novel, and a new detective, Hercule Poirot. This book was a bit different because the plot was more important than the characters and the writer asked readers to guess the name of the murderer. Later, in the 1930s and 40s, Dorothy Sayers wrote detective novels where the relationships between the characters were sometimes more interesting than the plot.

Reading can give us a fascinating view of the past, and when we read these detective stories and novels we can also learn something about how people lived and thought in the 19th and 20th centuries. These authors are still very popular. They influence present-day authors such as J.K. Rowling and they are probably going to inspire crime fiction for decades to come.

CAN YOU understand these people?

38.25 Watch or listen and answer the questions.



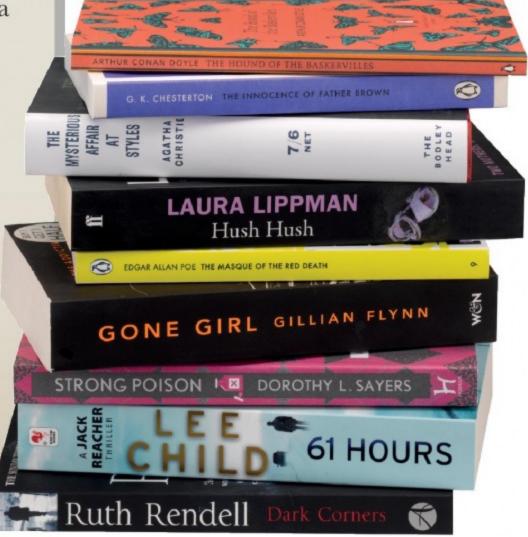
1	Rebecca's family lives in
	a Italy b the UK c Newcastle
2	Last weekend, James
	a went out with friends c watched a concert on T\
	b went to the cinema
3	In Maura's bedroom there's
	a a TV and a cupboard c a bed and a desk
	b a wardrobe and a bed
4	Yesterday, Asya
	a went to bed late c had lunch with her brother
	b went out with her sister
5	Last New Year's Eve, David celebrated
	a at home b with friends c with his children

CAN YOU say this in English?

Do the tasks with a partner. Tick (\checkmark) the box if you can do these things.

Can you...?

- 1 say three things about a famous (dead) person from your country
- 2 say five things you did last week, using past time expressions, e.g. last night, yesterday, (three) days ago, etc.
- 3 say where and when you were born
- 4 ask five questions about the past with was / were or did



#mydinnerlastnight

What did A pizza you have and some for dinner? salad.

G countable / uncountable nouns, a / an, some / any **V** food and drink **P** the letters ea

VOCABULARY food and drink

Do the quiz with a partner. Add vowels to make the words.

	FOOD & DRINK QUIZ
I	two kinds of Italian food pzz pizza pst
2	two things you can add to coffee mlk sgr
	a kind of food that vegetarians don't eat mt
	a drink you buy in a bottle mnrl wtr
	c crm
	a vegetable you can make chips from ptt
	something you use to make an omelette ggs
	a lot of people are addicted to this sweet food chclt
	a snack made with two pieces of bread sndwch
	the three meals we usually have every day brkfst Inch dnnr

Vp.163 Vocabulary Bank Food and drink

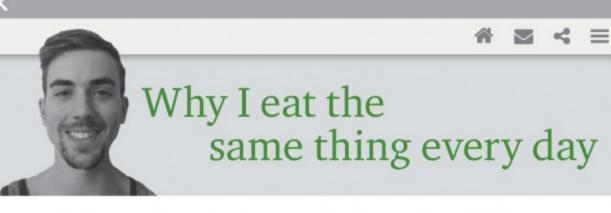
What's your favourite...?

breakfast dessert fruit snack vegetable

Is there any food or drink you don't like?

- **GRAMMAR** countable / uncountable nouns, a / an, some / any
- Look at the photo of blogger Nathan Wiebe's lunch. Can you name any of the things in the photo? Do you think it's a healthy lunch?
- Look at the title. Why do you think he eats the same thing every day? Read his blog and check.

- Read the blog again. Answer the questions with a partner.
 - 1 What do Jobs, Zuckerberg, and Einstein have in common?
 - 2 What are two positive things about Nathan's diet?
 - 3 Does he ever get bored of it? Why (not)?
 - 4 Do you think Nathan's diet is healthy?
 - 5 Is there a meal where you eat the same thing every day? What?
 - 6 Would you like to try wearing the same clothes or eating the same food every day? How long do you think you could do it for?



Steve Jobs, Mark Zuckerberg, and Albert Einstein have one thing in common. They all wear, or wore, more or less the same clothes every day. Why? Because if you wear the same clothes every day, you don't waste time choosing what to wear. I decided to copy them, but with my diet, so I eat the same food every day. This is what I have:

- breakfast: a cup of black coffee
- lunch: some smoked salmon, an avocado, and some cream cheese on a piece of bread
- dinner: some bacon, two eggs, some cheese, and some green vegetables



The good thing about this plan for me is that I spend less time and money buying food, and I also never need to worry if my diet is healthy or not (because I know it is). Now, you're probably thinking, 'he's sure to get tired of eating the same food every day'. Well, after about a year, I can promise you that I'm not. I change my meals a bit by having different kinds of cheese and using different herbs and spices. I also change the vegetables that I have for dinner.

d Complete the sentences with a, an, or some.

1 Nathan has _____ cup of coffee for breakfast.
2 He has ____ smoked salmon and ____ avocado for lunch.
3 He has ____ cheese and ____ vegetables for dinner.

e Gp.140 Grammar Bank 9A

f \$\infty 9.3\$ Listen to a couple talking about what food they need to buy. Write their shopping list.

some coffee, some milk,...

3 LISTENING

a Look at the photos posted with the hashtag #mydinnerlastnight. With a partner, which photo do you think shows...

1 something that the person cooked

2 takeaway food that the person ordered

3 something that the person ate in a restaurant

4 something that the person's mother cooked

b \$\infty 9.4\$ Listen to the people talking about their photos and check your answers to a.

Glossary

Thanksgiving a national holiday in the USA, in November

c Listen again. Who (1-4) talks about...?

a good restaurant near their house

ways of preparing something

a dish with two main ingredients

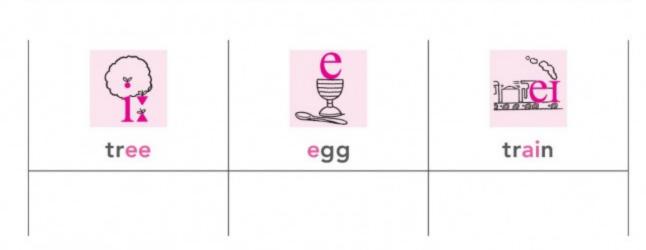
a meal for a special occasion

d Which of the four dishes or meals would you like to eat? Which wouldn't you like?

4 PRONUNCIATION the letters ea

a How is ea pronounced in these words? Put them in the correct column.

bread breakfast eat healthy ice cream meat peas steak tea



b ①9.5 Listen and check. Practise saying them. Which is the most common pronunciation of ea? #mydinnerlastnight

QBV







5 SPEAKING

a Make a food diary for yesterday. Write what food and drink you had.

Breakfast - a cup of coffee, some cereal

b Work in pairs. Tell each other what you had yesterday. Say where you had it and who made it.

I had breakfast at home, and I made it. I had a cup of coffee and some cereal.

c Answer the questions in pairs.

What do you usually have...?

- · for a quick lunch when you don't have time to cook
- for dessert at home or in a restaurant
- when you're hungry between meals
- · for breakfast at the weekend
- for a special occasion
- · when you order a takeaway

G quantifiers: how much / how many, a lot of, etc.

V food containers P linking, /ʃ/ and /s/



- 1 20 9.7 Listen to five people asking for things in shops. Write the things they want to buy.
- Make phrases with the containers in **a** and the words below.

biscuits cereal Coke crisps jam milk salt sugar tuna a packet of biscuits

GRAMMAR quantifiers

Look at the photos of food and drink. Number the photos 0, 1, 2, or 3(0 = no sugar / salt - 3 = a lot of sugar / salt).



Ask and answer questions about the things in a.



How much sugar is there in dark chocolate?)

(I'm not sure. Quite a lot?

© Communication Sugar and salt p.106 Check your answers to a.

- Complete the sentences with a food or drink from a.
 - 1 There isn't any salt in _____.
 - 2 There's a little sugar in ______.
 - 3 There's quite a lot of salt in ______
 - 4 There's a lot of sugar in _____.
- G p.140 Grammar Bank 9B
- Work in pairs. A say how much you eat of the first thing in the list below. Give more information if you can. Then ask How about you? B do the same for the second thing, etc.

fish meat potatoes vegetables chocolate fast food eggs pasta olive oil butter cheese

I eat a lot of fish. I eat it maybe three or four times a week. How about you?

PRONUNCIATION /ʃ/ and /s/

1 1 2 2 3 9.9 Listen to the words and sounds. Then listen and repeat.

	shower	sugar fish
S	snake	salt sweets

20 9.10 Put the words in the correct row. Listen and check.

centre cereal cinema crisps delicious fresh information reception rice salad science shopping special sure

- 9.11 Listen and repeat the conversation. Then practise it with a partner.
 - A Are you sure this is salt? I think it's sugar.
 - B No, I'm sure it's salt. I put some in the rice salad.
 - A Let's taste the salad. Aargh. It was sugar. I told you.
 - B Sorry!

Fascinating facts about...



At different times in history, both sugar and salt were called 'white gold', because they were so expensive and difficult to get. But there are many more interesting facts about sugar and salt...

•	1	is used to make glass, washing powder, and
	paper.	

- ² really helps the medicine go down!
 It's an important ingredient of many modern medicines.
- Christopher Columbus introduced ³______
 to the New World in 1493 on his second voyage.
- If you put ⁴ _____ into a vase of flowers, the flowers last longer.
- If you want to check if an egg is fresh, put it in a cup with water and ⁵______. If the egg floats, it isn't very fresh.
- In the UK, there's a club for people who collect the little packets of ⁶______ you get when you order tea or coffee in a café or restaurant.
- If your dog or cat has fleas, and they are now living in your carpets, put some ⁷_____ on the carpets and leave it for 12 hours. This kills all the fleas.
- Only 6% of the ⁸ _____ used in the USA is used in food; another 17% is used for de-icing roads in the winter months.
- Sure and ⁹ ____ are the only two words in the English language that begin with 'su' and are pronounced 'sh'.
- Scientists use ¹⁰ ______ to make different kinds of plastic, e.g. for food packaging.
- 11 _____ removes red wine stains (though probably not from your new white carpet).
- If you eat too much ¹²_____ (about one gram per kilogram of weight), you can die.

 This was a method of ritual suicide in ancient China.

Glossary

flea a very small insect that can jump and that lives on and bites animals and people

4 READING

- a Read the magazine article. With a partner, complete the facts with sugar or salt.
- b **19.12** Listen and check.
- c Find these verbs in the article. What do they mean? How do you pronounce them?

introduce float collect order de-ice remove

d How many of the facts did you know? Which ones?

5 SPEAKING

- a Read the questionnaire and complete the questions with How much or How many.
- b In pairs, interview your partner. Do you think he / she needs to eat less sugar and salt?

How much sugar and salt do YOU have a day?

Sugar

Su	igui
1	spoons of sugar do you have
	in your tea or coffee?
	a three or more b two c one d none
2	bottles or cans of Coke (or
	other fizzy drinks) do you drink a day?
	a three or more b two c one d none
3	fruit or fruit juice do you have
	a day?
	a a lot b quite a lot c not much
	d none
4	sweets or biscuits do you eat
	a week?
	a a lot b not many c very few d none
~	••
Sa	ilt
5	How often do you add salt to your food at the

table? **a** always **b** often **c** sometimes **d** never

takeaway food do you eat?

a a lot b quite a lot c not much d none

7 _____ bread do you eat a day?a a lot b quite a lot c a little d none

8 _____ packets of crisps do you eat a week?

a a lot b quite a lot c a few d none

Facts and figures

Is the USA bigger than China?

No, China is bigger.

G comparative adjectives V high numbers P /a/, sentence stress

VOCABULARY high numbers

- Read three questions from a radio quiz show. Choose a, b, or c.
 - 1 What is the population of the UK?
 - a 47,000,000
 - **b** 57,000,000
 - c 67,000,000
 - 2 How far is it from New York City in the east to Los Angeles in the west?
 - a 2,500km
 - **b** 4,000km
 - c 5,000km
 - 3 How many politicians are there in the **British Parliament?**
 - a 450
 - b 650
 - c 750
- One of the state of the How do you say the three answers?
- Vp.148 Vocabulary Bank Days and numbers Do Part 4.
- **10** 9.15 Listen and write the ten numbers you hear.
 - 1 199
- e Answer the questions with a partner.
 - 1 What's the population of your town or city?
 - 2 What's the population of your country?
 - 3 How far is it from your town or city to...? a London
 - b New York
 - 4 How many politicians are there in your country's parliament?

LISTENING

- **10** 9.16 Listen to the introduction to a show called Quiz Night. Answer the questions.
 - 1 How long do the contestants have to say if the sentences are true or false?
 - 2 How much do they win if they get...?
 - a the first answer right
 - b the second answer right
 - c the third answer right
 - d all eight answers right
 - 3 If they get an answer wrong, how much do they lose?
 - 4 What can a contestant do if they are not sure of the answer?
- In pairs, look at sentences 1–8 from Quiz Night. Write T (true) or F (false).

QUIZ NIGHT

- A whale can make a louder noise than a lion. 1
- The First World War was shorter than the Second World War. 2
- The American film industry is bigger than the Indian film 3 industry.
- In July, Edinburgh is hotter than Sydney. 4
- Silver is heavier than gold. 5
- The mountain K2 is more difficult to climb than Mount Everest.
- Driving in Italy is more dangerous than driving in Belgium. 7
- It's better to do exercise in the morning than in the 8 afternoon.



- 17 Description 19 September 19 Description 19 De answers to b. How much money does he win?
- Listen again for why the answers are true or false. Write down all the important numbers in each answer.

3 GRAMMAR comparative adjectives

a Look at the adjectives in the Quiz Night sentences. In pairs, answer the questions.

Using adjectives to compare two things:

- 1 What two letters do you put at the end of one-syllable adjectives, e.g. *loud*?
- 2 Why is big different?
- 3 What happens when an adjective ends in consonant + y, e.g. heavy?
- 4 What word do you put in front of long adjectives, e.g. dangerous?
- 5 What's the comparative form of good?
- 6 What's the missing word?

 China is bigger _____ Japan.
- b **G**p.140 **Grammar Bank 9C**

4 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING

/ə/, sentence stress

- - A whale can make a louder noise than a lion.
- **b** <a>9.20 Listen and write six comparative sentences.
- c Listen again and <u>copy</u> the <u>rhy</u>thm. Are the sentences true or false?
- d Communication Quiz Night A p.107 B p.112 Play Quiz Night.

5 READING

- a Read the first part of the article about pub quizzes. Do you have something similar in your country?
- b Now read the Tips for how to win and complete them with A-G.
 - A Choose your team carefully.
 - B Don't be a bad loser.
 - C Don't cheat!
 - D Enjoy yourself!
 - E Keep your eyes open.
 - F Know about current affairs.
 - G Learn the big names.
- c Look at these words from the article to do with quizzes. What do they mean? How do you pronounce them?

a team a quizmaster an expert to cheat to memorize to be a bad loser to win

- d Answer the questions with a partner.
 - 1 Do you play any games or do quizzes with general knowledge questions, e.g. *Trivial Pursuit*?
 - 2 Are you a good or bad loser? Do you ever cheat?
 - 3 What TV quiz shows are popular in your country? Do you watch any of them? Why (not)?
 - 4 Do you know anyone who loves a particular quiz show? Which one? Why?
 - 5 Would you like to be a contestant on a quiz show? Which one?



Pub Quizzes

A pub quiz is a general knowledge quiz held in a pub or bar. They started in the UK in the 1970s, and there are now more than 22,000 weekly quizzes in pubs all over the country. Friends form teams, usually of about five or six people, and they decide on a name for their team. The person who asks the questions is called the 'quizmaster', and the teams write their answers on a piece of paper. You can't use your phone to look for the answers! In some pubs, teams pay to be in the quiz – from about 50p to £5 per person

 and the winning team gets the money. But a lot of pub quizzes are free because pubs want people to come on nights which aren't usually busy, like Mondays and Tuesdays.

Tips for how to win

- 1 D That's really what it's all about. And don't take it too seriously.
- 2 Make sure you have friends who are experts at different subjects.
- Mobile phones, reference books, newspapers, etc. are not permitted.
- 4 Find out about events in the news, especially politics.
- Memorize the winners of recent and past sporting events,
 Oscars, Grammys, reality TV shows, political elections, etc., as
 well as the latest singles and album charts.
- 6 Always look out for new facts, wherever you are.
- 7 If you don't win the quiz, remember, there is always next time.

Round 1 (Culture)

THE RED LION QUIZ

1	Madonna	1
2	?	X
3	Nessun Dorma	X
4	Daniel Craig	1
5	Almodovar ??	1
6	Prince	1
7	??	X
8	Martin Freeman	1

Round 2 (Sport)

	1	George Best	1
	2	Laura Trott	X
	3	?	X
7000	4	Alastair Brownlee	1
120000	5	The Stanley Cup	1
	6	1993	1
	7	4 minutes	1
	8	??	X

Round 3

1		
1	a many and a	
1	1	
4		
1		
(11/2/2019	
	and the same of th	
8		



Practical English At a restaurant

ordering a meal V understanding a menu

AN INVITATION TO DINNER



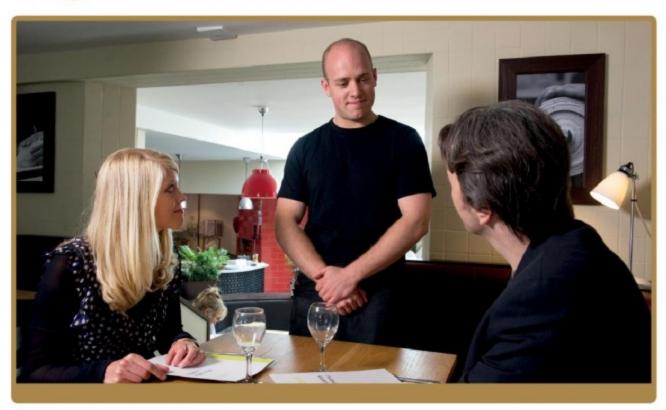
- T (true) or F (false).
 - 1 Jenny and Rob worked last night.
 - 2 Jenny wants to read Rob's article.
 - 3 It's Eddie's birthday today.
 - 4 Rob and Daniel invite Jenny to dinner.
 - 5 Jenny says yes to Rob.
- **b** Watch or listen again. Say why the **F** sentences are false.
- and repeat B's phrases.
 - Responding to what somebody says
 - 1 A It's my birthday today.
 - **B Happy Birthday!**
 - 2 A We won the cup!
 - **B** Congratulations! 3 A I have my driving test tomorrow.
 - B Good luck!
 - 4 A I got all my English homework right.
 - B Well done!
 - 5 A I didn't pass my exam.
 - B Oh dear! Never mind.
- from the box.
 - 1)) I got two goals this afternoon. (Well done!

- VOCABULARY understanding a menu
- Complete the menu with Main courses, Desserts, or Starters.



- **b 1 1 1 9.24** What do the **highlighted** words mean? How do you pronounce them? Watch or listen and check.
- Cover the menu. In pairs, try to remember what's on it.

3 ORDERING A MEAL



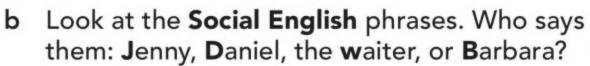
- a ①9.25 Watch or listen to Jenny and Daniel having dinner. Tick the things they order on the menu.
- b Watch or listen again. Complete the You hear phrases.

You hear	You say
Good evening. Do you have a ¹ ?	Yes, a table for two. My name's Daniel O'Connor.
Come this ² , please.	
Are you ready to ³ ?	Yes. The soup and the mushroom ravioli, please. I'd like the mozzarella salad and then the chicken, please.
What would you 4 to drink?	Just water for me. A bottle of mineral water, please.
5 or sparkling?	Is sparkling OK? Yes, sparkling.
Thank you, sir.	Thank you.

- **d** In threes, practise the conversation.
- e Role-play the conversation in groups of three. Then change roles.
 - A You are the waiter.
 - B and C go to Luigi's.
 - A begin Good evening. Do you have a reservation?

4 D THE END OF THE MEAL

- - 1 How does Jenny normally celebrate her birthday?
 - 2 Do they order dessert or coffee?
 - 3 What does Daniel say to Jenny after the meal?
 - 4 How does Jenny answer?
 - 5 Does Barbara give Jenny good news or bad news?
 - 6 Where does Jenny want to go after the meal?





Social English

Nothing special.

Would you like a dessert?

Not for me, thanks.

A decaf espresso.

The same for me, please.

Go ahead.

Good news?

Could I have the bill, please?

① 9.28 Watch or listen and check.
Then watch or listen and repeat the phrases.

d Complete conversations A–G with Social English phrases 1–8. Practise with a partner.

Α		Yes, fantastic. I have a new job!
B ch	Two soups, one nicken, and one fish.	Just coffee.
С	Excuse me.	Yes, of course, sir.
D	What do you usually do on New Year's Eve?	We don't really celebrate it.
Е	What coffee would you like?	
F	I'd like the ravioli.	I love pasta!
G	Sorry, I need to answer this call.	

CAN YOU...?

use common phrases, e.g. Good luck, Congratulations, etc.

understand a menu

order a meal

The most dangerous place...

What's the oldest building in your town?

I'm not sure. Probably the cathedral.

G superlative adjectives V places and buildings P consonant groups

1 VOCABULARY places and buildings

Complete these famous tourist sights in the UK and the USA with a word from the list.

Br	idge	Castle	Gallery	Park	Square	Street	
1	The I	Brooklyn		con	nects Ma	nhattan and Brooklyn.	
2	2 Downing is where the British Prime Minister lives.						
3	3 Windsor		is	is the Royal Family's weekend home and			
	the la	argest inh	nabited ca	astle in	the world	d.	
4	Cent	ral	is a	green	space in	the middle of New York.	
5 The National is London's most famous art					nost famous art museum.		
6 Times is the centre of New York				York's theatre district.			

- 10.1 Listen and check.
- Vp.164 Vocabulary Bank Places and buildings
- **GRAMMAR** superlative adjectives
- Look at the photos. What countries do you think they are in?
- With a partner, complete 1–6 with a phrase from the list.

The biggest The busiest The longest The most dangerous The oldest The tallest

- 10.3 Listen and check your answers to a and b.
- Complete the chart with the correct form.

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
old	older	the oldest
	taller	the tallest
long		the longest
big	bigger	
	busier	the busiest
dangerous	more dangerous	***************************************

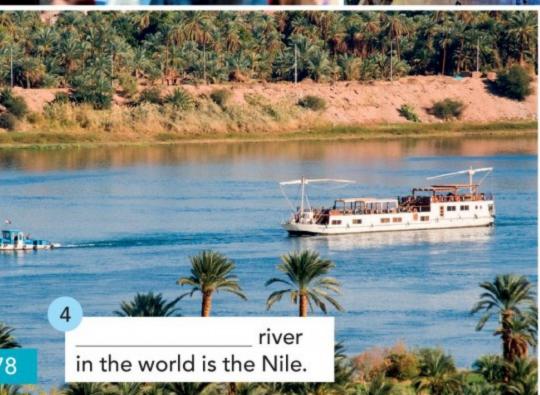
- How are superlative adjectives different in form from comparative adjectives?
- @p.142 Grammar Bank 10A
- 10.5 Listen and write six superlative questions.
- In groups, ask and answer the questions in **g**. Choose from the cities below.















3 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING consonant groups

Consonant groups

Two or three consonants together can be difficult to pronounce, e.g. fastest, most dangerous.

a 10.6 Listen and repeat.

beautiful
the most beautiful
the most beautiful square
What's the most beautiful square?

- b 10.7 Now listen and repeat the same pattern with 1–4.
 - 1 old (building)
 - 2 interesting (museum)
 - 3 good (shopping street)
 - 4 nice (place)
- c @ Communication I'm a tourist. Help! A p.107 B p.112 Role-play being a tourist.

4 READING

a Read the article. Which suggestion do you think is the most useful?

- **b** Read the article again. Complete the paragraphs with sentences A–E.
 - A All you need to do is smile and wave to them.
 - B The only thing that saved me was a student who shouted, 'Don't stop, keep walking!'.
 - C So if you really can't cross the road, you can get a taxi to take you to the other side.
 - D When I heard this I thought, 'Maybe it's better to just stay in my hotel and read!'.
 - E The second time I chose a woman selling vegetables with baskets full of sweet potatoes, and again I survived.
- c Cover the article. Can you remember seven words for vehicles?
- d Work in groups and answer the questions.
 - 1 What's the most popular form of transport in your town or city?
 - 2 In what part of town and at what time of day is the traffic the worst?
 - 3 How do you normally get around?
 - 4 Do cars always stop at zebra crossings?
 - 5 Are there any streets that are really difficult to cross?
 - 6 Is there any town or city you visited where you had problems crossing the road, or where you found the traffic really frightening?

5 WRITING

Imagine you want to advertise your town or city for tourists. Write an advert using superlative adjectives. Add photos if you can.

Come to Kielce. It isn't the biggest or the most beautiful town in Poland, but it has the cleanest air and the most delicious cheesecake...

The most dangerous place in the world to cross the road

If you want to cross the road in most countries, you wait for a gap in the traffic, and then you cross. But not in Ho Chi Minh City, where there's never a gap in the traffic. Apart from the cars, lorries, bikes, and buses, there are millions of motorbikes and scooters, which are the most popular form of transport in Vietnam. Crossing the road is an adventure, and many tourists find it impossible. So what can you do?

Keep walking. The receptionist at my hotel told me, 'When it feels right, walk into the road. The most important thing to remember is to keep walking. Don't stop. Don't run. Don't look left or right. And don't walk in front of a bus, because they can't stop easily.'

Cross with a local person. They know what they're doing, and this is the safest way for beginners. I looked for a middle-aged local man and I crossed the road with him. I made sure that he was between me and the traffic, and I prayed as I walked next to him.

Cross in a group. I met some American students who were happy to walk across the street with me. But this time when I saw a car coming straight at me, I stopped and put up my arm (like a traffic policeman). This was a big mistake.

Find a policeman. There are lovely policemen in green uniforms, and their job is to help frightened tourists to cross the road.



Five continents in a day

Where are We're you going going to to stay? rent a flat.

G be going to (plans), future time expressions **V** city holidays **P** sentence stress

GRAMMAR be going to (plans)

Look at the map. Where are the cities? Say the country and continent for each city.

Caracas is in Venezuela, South America.

- 10.8 Gunnar Garfors and Adrian Butterworth are planning to break a world record by visiting five continents in one day. Listen and draw their route on the map.
- Listen again and complete the gaps with a verb from the list.

arrive be celebrate fly get go out start visit

- Look at the highlighted sentence in the interview. Then answer the questions.
 - 1 What form is the verb after going to?
 - 2 Do we use going to to talk about the past, the present, or the future?
- © p.142 Grammar Bank 10B
- 10.10 Do you think Gunnar and Adrian succeeded? Listen to Gunnar and find out.
- What do you think about Gunnar and Adrian's trip? Do you think it was a) a waste of money, b) bad for the environment, or c) an exciting thing to do?



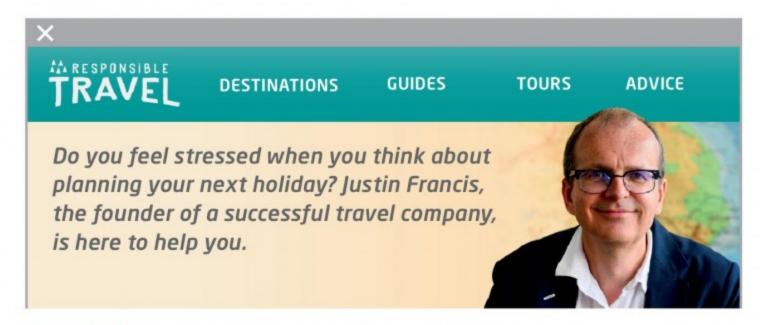
2 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING

sentence stress

- a $\bigcirc 10.11$ Listen and repeat the conversations. Copy the <u>rhy</u>thm.
 - 1 A What are you going to do this summer?
 - B I'm going to go to France.
 - 2 A Are you going to go out on Friday night?
 - B Yes, I'm going to see a film.
- b @Communication What are you going to do? A p.107 B p.112 Interview a partner about his / her plans.

3 LISTENING

- a Imagine you are planning a holiday. What do you think about first? Number the following 1–4.
 - Where am I going to go?
 - What am I going to do?
 - Who am I going to go with?
 - What previous holidays did I really enjoy?



- b 010.12 Listen to Justin Francis from Responsible Travel. Does he agree with your order?
- c Listen again and make notes to answer the questions.
 - 1 What examples does Justin give if you want to...?
 - relax
 - go somewhere different
 - have an adventure
 - learn a new skill
 - 2 If you are going to go on holiday with other people, what do you need to make sure of?
 - 3 What does he recommend if you want to meet new people on holiday?
 - 4 What three examples does he give of things that can make you happy on holiday?
 - 5 What are you ready to start thinking about after following steps 1–3?
- d Answer the questions.
 - What do you think of Justin's ideas? What do you usually want to do on holiday?
 - Can you remember a holiday that made you very happy?
 Why was it special?

4 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING city holidays

a Complete the holiday phrases with a verb from the list.

book rent	_		go	have	meet
1		a fli	ght,	a train,	accommodation
2		by	train	/bus/	plane
3		a car / a flat			
4		in a hotel / hostel			
5		out (in local restaurants)			
6		museums and art galleries			
7			veni		
8		a g	ood ·	time	
9		_	v pec		

- b Talk to a partner. What do you like doing on holiday? Try to find some things you have in common.
- c With your partner, plan a dream trip. You are going to visit three cities in the same continent. Your holiday can be a maximum of ten days. Answer the questions.

What cities are you going to visit?
How long are you going to stay in each city?
How are you going to get there?
Where are you going to stay?
What are you going do in each place?



Making suggestions

Let's (go to...). Why don't we (go to...)? That's a good idea.

d Change partners. Tell each other about your holiday plans.

We're going to go to South America – to Buenos Aires, Rio, and Montevideo. We're going to stay in hostels because we don't have much money...

e Do you prefer your new partner's plans? Would you like to change partners and go with him / her?

5 WRITING

wp.117 Writing A formal email Make a reservation in a Bed and Breakfast.

The fortune teller

Yes, and Am I going you're going to fall to be very in love? happy.

G be going to (predictions) **V** verb phrases **P** word stress

VOCABULARY verb phrases

- Do people in your country go to fortune tellers, or use fortune telling sites on the internet? Why do you think they do this? Do you believe in fortune telling?
- What pictures can you see on the fortune teller's cards? Match the cards and verb phrases.

become famous

get a new job

get married

meet somebody new

fall in love

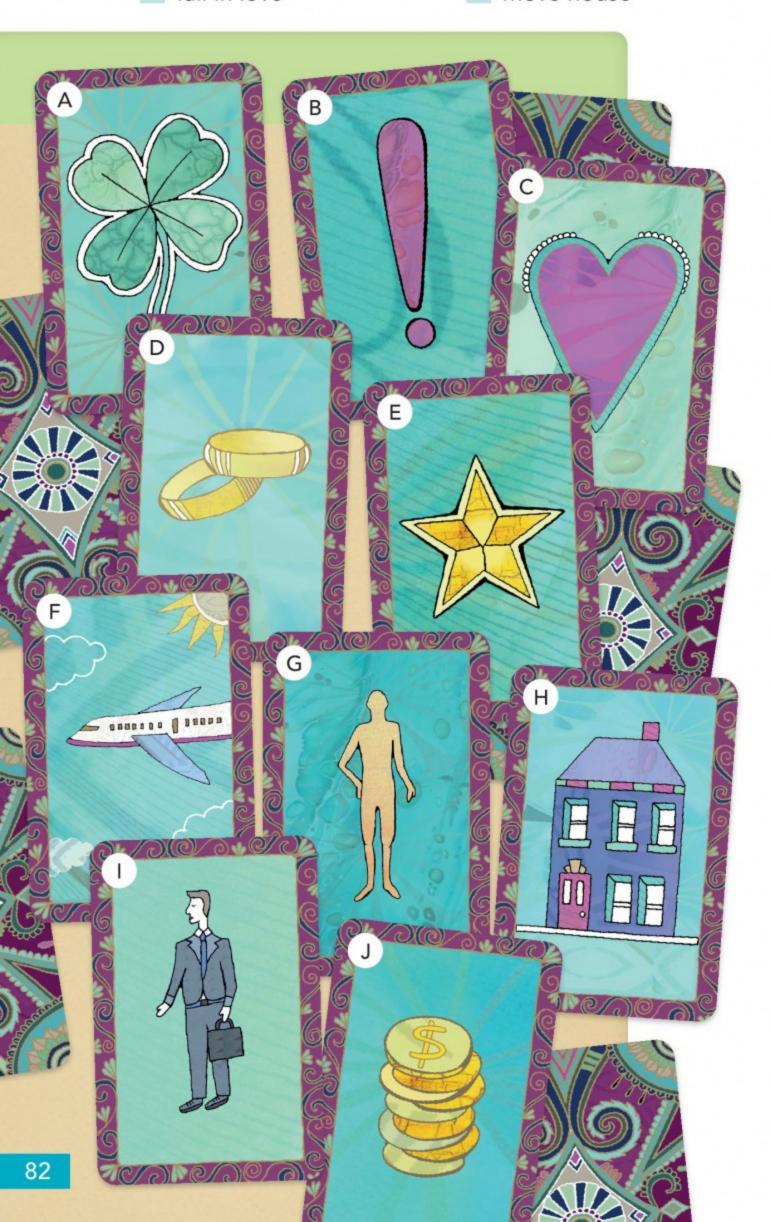
get a lot of money

have a surprise

A be lucky

travel

move house



PRONUNCIATION word stress

Word stress in two-syllable words Approximately 80% of two-syllable words are stressed on the first syllable, e.g. argue.

Look at the words from a story. Which four are stressed on the second syllable?

ar gue bellieve boy friend falmous for tune fulture ildea lulcky malrried molney problem quesition sur prise to day traivel worry

10.13 Listen and check. Practise saying the words.

READING & LISTENING

- Look at the photos and the title of the story. What do you think it's going to be about?
- **b** 10.14 Read and listen to Part 1 of the story. In pairs, answer the questions.
 - 1 Who does Jane want to see?
 - 2 Who is going to tell her about her future? Why?
 - 3 Why couldn't she see very well?
- 10.15 Listen to Part 2. With a partner, complete the information.

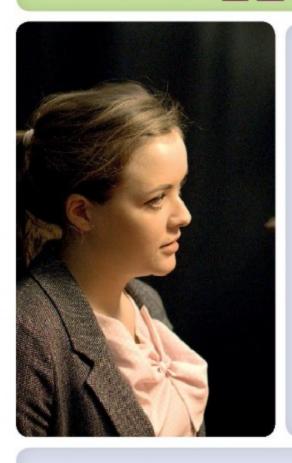
1	Jane	has a prob	lem with her	
_				

- 2 She chooses _____ cards.
- 3 Her first card means she's going to be ______.
- 4 Jane asks the fortune teller if she's going to ______ with her boyfriend.
- 10.16 Read and listen to Part 3. In pairs, answer the questions.
 - 1 What's the second card? What does it mean?
 - 2 Why is this a problem for Jane?
 - 3 What's her third card? What does it mean?
 - 4 Who's Jim? Where did Jane meet him?
 - 5 What do you think the fourth card is going to be?
- 10.17 Listen to Part 4. With a partner, complete the information.

1	Her fourth card means she is goin	g to	
	her boyfriend and go to	with Jim.	

- 2 Very soon they are going to ______.
- 3 Jane asks if she is going to be _____ and the fortune teller says _____.
- 4 She pays the fortune teller £___

HT'S WRITTEN IN THE CARDS



Part 1

'Come in,' said a voice. Jane Ross opened the door and went into a small room. There was a man sitting behind a table.

'Good afternoon,' said Jane. 'I want to see Madame Yolanda, the fortune teller.'

'Madame Yolanda is not here today,' said the man. 'But don't worry. I'm going to tell you about your future. What questions do you want to ask?' Jane looked at the fortune teller. She couldn't see him very well because the room was very dark.



Part 3

He turned over the second card.

'Mm, a house. A new house. You're going to move, very soon, to another country.'

'But my boyfriend works here. He can't move to another country.'

'Let's look at the next card,' said the fortune teller. He turned over the third card.

'A heart. You're going to fall in love.'

'Who with?' asked Jane.

'Let me concentrate. I can see a tall dark man. He's very attractive.'

'Oh, that's Jim,' said Jane.

'Who's Jim? Your boyfriend?'

'No. Jim is a man I met at a party last month. He's an actor, from New York. He says he's in love with me. It was his idea for me to come to Madame Yolanda.'

'Well, the card says that you're going to fall in love with him.'

'Are you sure?' asked Jane. 'But what about my boyfriend?'

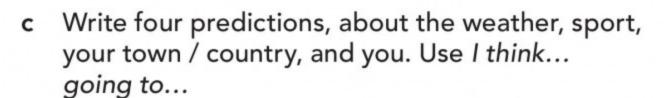
'Let's look at the fourth card,' said the fortune teller.

4 D VIDEO LISTENING

- a 10.18 Watch or listen to Parts 1–4 of It's written in the cards again. What do you think is going to happen?
- b ① 10.19 Now watch or listen to Part 5 of the story. In pairs, answer the questions.
 - 1 Who was the fortune teller?
 - 2 Why did he pay Madame Yolanda £100?
 - 3 What's the fifth card? What does Madame Yolanda think is going to happen?

5 GRAMMAR be going to (predictions)

- a Look at the two sentences. Which one is a plan? Which one is a prediction?
 - 1 She's going to be very lucky.
 - 2 She's going to go on holiday next week.
- b **G**p.142 **Grammar Bank 10C**



I think it's going to snow tonight.

d Compare your predictions with a partner. Do you agree?

6 SPEAKING

Role-play fortune telling.

- A Look at the ten cards in 1. Secretly, number the cards in a different order (1–10).
- **B** Choose five numbers from 1–10.
- A Predict B's future using those cards.
- **B** Ask for more information. Then change roles.
- A I'm going to tell you about your future. Your first card is a star. You're going to become famous. You're going to be on TV.
 - (B Great! What programme?

981 0 Revise and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle	a, b, or c.
	There's milk in the fridge.
	a some b any c a
2	We don't need bread.
	a no b any c a
3	How fruit do you eat a day?
	a much b many c a lot
4	I drink coffee.
	a much b a lot c a lot of
5	A How much salt do you eat? B
	a A little b A few c Much
6	A Is there any sugar? B No, sorry,
	a there isn't none
	b there isn't anyc there isn't some
7	Tea is coffee in this café.
,	a cheaper that
	b more cheap than
	c cheaper than
8	This exercise is than the last one.
	a more easy b easier c easyer
9	My English is than my brother's.
4.0	a gooder b better c more good
10	This is size that we have.
	a the biggestb the most big
	c the bigger
11	It's restaurant in the city.
	a the baddest b the worst
	c the worse
12	What's park in your town?
	a the most beautiful b most beautiful
	c the more beautiful
13	to buy my ticket this afternoon.
4.4	a Igo b Igoing c I'm going
14	to get married?
	a Do they goingb They are goingc Are they going
15	I think tomorrow.
15	a it snows b it's snowing
	c it's going to snow

VOCABULARY

- a Circle the word that is different.
 - 1 breakfast dessert dinner lunch
 - 2 mushrooms onions peas strawberries
 - 3 milk mineral water orange juice sugar
 - 4 chips crisps potatoes tomatoes
 - 5 cake chicken fruit salad ice cream

b Match the food to the containers.

beer	fruit juice	honey	rice	ton	natoes
1 a c	an of			4	a packet
2 ati	in of				a carton
3 a ja	ar of				

- c Circle the correct word or phrase.
 - 1 It's a hundred twenty / a hundred and twenty miles from here.
 - 2 The population is about three million / millions.
 - 3 That new department shop / department store is great.
 - 4 Let's have a coffee at one of those cafés in the square / bridge.
 - 5 Where is the main railway centre / station?
- d Complete the phrases with these verbs.

become	book	fall	aet	go	have	meet	move	stav	visit
1		a hot		3-	6		_ flights		
2		bus			7		_	oody n	ew
3	fai	mous			8		_ a mus	eum	
4	ma	arriec	1		9		_ a grea	t meal	
5	in	love			10		house		

PRONUNCIATION

a Practise the words and sounds.

Vowel sounds



egg



ow





boy

tourist

Consonant sounds











monkey



television

- b Pp.166-7 Sound Bank Say more words for each sound.
- c What sound do the pink letters have in these words?
 - 1 bread 2 chemist 3 oil 4 town 5 wrote
- d Under<u>line</u> the stressed syllable.
 - 1 cho|colate 3
 - 3 su|per|mar|ket
- 5 dan ge rous

- 2 de ssert
- 4 in teres ting



CAN YOU understand this text?

- Read the article once. Match the hotels and photos. Which one would you like to stay in?
- Read the article again. Match the hotels (A-C) to the sentences.

At which hotel can you...?

- 1 get a fantastic view of the sea
- 2 sleep a long way from other people
- 3 get married
- spend time with working animals
- do hard physical exercise
- have a massage or facial
- have a tour of geographical features
- 8 have a business meeting

CAN YOU understand these people?

10.21 Watch or listen and answer the questions.











Graziella

Kara

Maura

Kevin

Mica

- 1 Graziella eats a lot of ____.
 - a fruit
- b chocolate
- c salt

- a her
- 2 Kara is good at cooking food from ____ country. b her parents' c her husband's
- 3 One reason Maura loves Edinburgh is because ____.
 - a it's very multicultural
 - b it's on the coast
 - c the people are very friendly
- 4 When Kevin goes to Thailand he's going to visit ___ different places.
 - a two
- **b** three
- c four
- 5 Mica thinks that the biggest difference between New York and the UK is
 - a the weather
- b the people c the food

CAN YOU say this in English?

Do the tasks with a partner. Tick (\checkmark) the box if you can do these things.

Can you...?

- 1 say what you usually have for breakfast
- compare your country with the UK in three ways
- say what the best and worst things are about the town or city where you live
- 4 ask somebody what he / she is going to do...
 - tonight
 tomorrow
 next weekend



- A For people who love nature, **Verana** in Puerto Vallarta in Mexico is an amazing spa hotel with beautiful views on all sides. It has ten guesthouses, and four new buildings with balconies above the trees, from where you can see the beautiful Bay of Banderas. The spa has an infinity pool and offers a variety of different spa treatments, as well as yoga classes. You can go whale-watching, fish for tuna, and explore the area on foot. This is the perfect place for your wedding, your honeymoon, or both. But remember, you can only get there by boat!
- B Would you like to sleep in a mine? Then book the underground suite in Sala Silvermine in Sweden, and enjoy the world's deepest bedroom, 155 metres below the surface. Although the corridors are cold and dark, your rooms are warm (18°C), and the light comes from candles in beautiful silver candlesticks. You can also explore the caves and magical lakes with a guide. There are no other guests, so it's not for nervous people. Mobile phones don't work, but you have a radio for emergencies. In the morning they bring breakfast down to you. Perfect for romantic couples who like a bit of adventure.
- C You don't need to travel to the Arctic Circle to spend time with Siberian huskies. At the **Husky Lodge** in the Swiss canton of Schwyz, dog-lovers can sleep in cabins, heated with wood fires, next to the dogs' kennels. During the day you can join in with their training runs. They pull sledges in winter and bikes and carts in summer. In the evening there's an excellent restaurant. And if you have to work, there are three rooms for small conferences and seminars. If you can't afford the cabins, there's a campsite too - though maybe only in summer!

Adapted from the British press





Culture shock

They drive How do quite fast, but they drive? very well.

G adverbs (manner and modifiers)

NEWS

V common adverbs P connected speech

READING

- Think of a time when you went to another country or another city / region in your country for the first time. Was there anything that surprised you?
- Read some posts on a forum. Which topic don't they mention?

clothes exercise food health money transport

- Read the posts again. Match sentences 1–9 to the people who said them, L (Lena), R (Rahim), **N** (Natasha), **T** (Tara), or **J** (Julie).
 - People can earn good salaries without working hard.
 - Some people don't dress warmly in winter.
 - The President isn't paid very well. 3
 - People don't always speak politely to older people. 4
 - People have really big portions when they eat out. 5
 - Some hospitals are incredibly luxurious.
 - You can travel safely on public transport.
 - Doctors speak very openly to their patients.
 - You pay people well to do their job, and then you give them more money.
- Look again at sentences 1–9 about the USA. Are they true in your country? If not, say why.
- Learn these words and phrases related to money. What do they mean? How do you pronounce them?

salary /'sæləri/ insurance /ɪn'ʃuərəns/ tip /tɪp/ earn money /3xn 'mʌni/ pay bills /peɪ bɪlz/ pay rent /per rent/



THINGS I DIDN'T KNOW UNTIL I GOT HERE

What was a surprise for you when you came to live in America?

LENA FROM UKRAINE

COMMENT

When I eat out with my husband or friends, we usually share, because food portions are huge and we don't want all that food. But you can take home everything you don't eat, and I like that.

In the winter, you often see people in the street or on the subway who are wearing just a T-shirt when it's really cold outside.

RAHIM FROM PAKISTAN

When people speak to their boss (and to their teachers) they call them by their first name. They do the same to old people too, even when they don't know them well. It doesn't seem polite to me.

NATASHA FROM BELARUS

The American President's salary is about the same as a doctor's. He isn't the richest person in the country. That surprised me! Some hospitals are like smart hotels – but a lot of people can't go there because they don't have medical insurance. Also, doctors don't always explain everything to their patients in my country. Here, they tell you everything.

TARA FROM INDIA

I couldn't believe the tipping system, for example, in places like the hairdresser's. You cut my hair and I pay you - a lot! Why do I need to give you a tip as well?

Public transport can be dangerous in India. But I was on the subway here in New York, going home late at night, when a group of people got on. They were very loud - I think they were drunk – and we were quite frightened. But at the next stop two police officers got on. The people stopped shouting when they saw the police. I felt really safe.

JULIE FROM CANADA

My husband is from Ecuador, and when he first arrived, he was really surprised by his salary. As a chef, he could earn enough money to pay bills, buy food, pay rent, have a good social life, and buy luxuries like our Xbox. In Quito, he worked 15 hours a day, and more at the weekend, and he earned half the money.

Adapted from the British press

digi ZABAN

2 GRAMMAR adverbs

- a Look at the highlighted phrases with adverbs in sentences 1–9 in 1c. Choose a or b to complete the rules.
 - 1 Regular adverbs
 An adverb is a adjective + -ly.
 b adjective + -lly.
 - 2 Use of adverbs

Adverbs describe a nouns.

b verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs.

3 Position of adverbs

Adverbs go a before a verb or verb phrase.

b after a verb or verb phrase.

Adverbs go a **before** another adverb or adjective.

b after another adverb or adjective.

b Gp.144 Grammar Bank 11A

- c 11.3 Listen and say what's happening. Use an adverb.
 - 1 They're speaking quietly.

3 LISTENING & PRONUNCIATION connected speech



Jack Horton lives in San José in Costa Rica, where he teaches computer science at a secondary school.

a 11.4 Listen to Jack talking about what surprised him when he arrived in Costa Rica. In general, is he positive, negative, or neutral about living there?



- b ①11.5 You're going to hear eight three- and four-word phrases that Jack says, linking the words. Listen and write the phrases.
 - 1 how incredibly friendly

c Listen to the whole interview again. Then, with a partner, complete the sentences.

TI	ne people (the ticos)	
1	They are much	than people in Europe.
2	Pura vida really means 'thing	gs'.
3	They are oftenf	or appointments because they use
TI	ne weather	
4	The temperature is about _	all year round.
5	In September and October, for two hours a	
TI	ne country	
6	The scenery is even	than he expected.
7	He was	the first time a volcano erupted.
TI	ne food	
8	The only things you can buy, and	
9	He really likes the	
Sa	an José	
10	He thinks it's probably	

d Would you like to go to Costa Rica for a holiday? Would you like to live there?

4 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING

common adverbs

11 The roads are _

Answer the questions in small groups. If the answer is yes, give more details. If no, say how they do these things. How about you?

Do you think people in your country...?



drive dangerously speak foreign languages fluently treat tourists well

talk loudly

work hard

take life seriously

treat people in shops and restaurants politely

dress well

wait patiently in queues

behave calmly in a crisis

In Spain, I think that some young men drive dangerously.
They drive very fast and they don't obey traffic rules. But I never drive dangerously. I drive quite slowly and carefully.

5 WRITING

Write three forum posts for people visiting your country, about habits that might surprise them. Use at least one adverb of manner or a modifier in each post.

We have our meals really late. We often have lunch at 2.30 and dinner at 10.00.

Experiences or things?

Would you like to learn a new language?

Yes, I want to learn Chinese.

G verb + to + infinitive

V verbs that take the infinitive P weak to, sentence stress

READING & SPEAKING

Read the dictionary definition of a bucket list. Do you have a similar phrase in your language?

bucket list noun BrE /'bakit list/ (**); NAmE /'bakit list/ (**) a list of things that you want to do before you die Travelling to India is number one on my bucket list.

- Read the **About me** section of Stef's blog. What does she say about...?
 - 1 the Canary Islands and Argentina She worked there when she was a student.
 - 2 Australia and New Zealand
 - 3 an IT company
 - 4 Istanbul, Switzerland, Chile, Prague
 - 5 having experiences
 - 6 three months ago

- Read the **My dreams** section. Tick (✓) the five things you would most like to do. Compare with a partner and say why.
- Cover My dreams. Remember the missing verbs.

1	a list
2	on holiday
3	a horse
4	a language
5	for a walk
6	a dream come true
7	a recipe
8	in a taxi

What do you think of Stef's lifestyle? Do you agree that experiences are more important than things?

BLOG

MY DREAMS HOME ABOUT ME BLOG

About me

Hi! I'm Stef, a traveller from Germany with a passion for travel, food, and photography.

During my studies, I worked in the Canary Islands and in Argentina and I studied for two semesters in the UK. After I finished, I decided that I didn't want to work for the rest of my life. I was 21 and couldn't imagine sitting in an office for the next 40 years and more. So I decided to go to Australia on 05 a working holiday visa. First, I worked for six months in Germany because I needed to save some money. I went to Sydney at the end of 2011. I spent Christmas on St Kilda Beach in Melbourne, I worked in a pub and then I travelled all over Australia and New Zealand.

> After coming back I got a job as a project assistant in an IT company - an office job. I was happy to have a routine again, but I spent all my holidays travelling - to Amsterdam, Istanbul, Portugal, Switzerland, Chile, Prague, and Morocco.

Some months passed, but finally I realized what I wanted

to do with my life, at least for now. Having experiences is

15 very important to me – more important than working in an office all week to pay for a flat that I hardly ever spend time in, and to buy things I don't really need. Three months ago, I left my job. I decided to work in different jobs, 20 sometimes here, sometimes abroad, sometimes as a volunteer, sometimes

for money. I have a lot of dreams and I want to make them come true.

My dreams

At the beginning of every year I make a 'bucket list' of 100 things I would like to do. These are some of them. You can probably do them in your country – you don't need to travel.

ABOUT ME

MY DREAMS

- · Put a secret in a balloon and let it fly away.
- Go on holiday with my best friend.
- Take a photo every day for a year.
- Learn to windsurf.
- Ride a horse on the beach.
 - Learn to play the guitar.
 - Learn a new language.
 - Read one book every week.
 - Run through a field of flowers.
- Learn to dive and take underwater photos.
- Go for a walk in the summer rain.
- Go to a festival or an outdoor concert.
- Explore my hometown.
- Do karaoke.
- Make my best friend's dream come true.
 - Do something that scares me.
 - Cook all the recipes in a cookbook.
 - Get in a taxi and shout 'follow that car'.



digi ZABAN

2 **GRAMMAR** verb + to + infinitive

a Match the phrases to make sentences from Stef's blog. Which word is missing?

I decided ____ save some money.
I needed ____ play the guitar.
Learn ___ go to Australia.

b **G**p.144 Grammar Bank 11B

3 PRONUNCIATION weak to, sentence stress

- a 11.7 Listen and write six sentences. Then listen and repeat them. How do you pronounce to?
- **b** 11.8 Listen and repeat the conversation. Copy the <u>rhy</u>thm. Practise it with a partner.
 - A Would you like to go to Australia?
 - B No, I wouldn't.
 - A Why not?
 - B Because I don't like snakes or insects.
- c Work with a partner. Choose five more things from Stef's bucket list (not the five your partner ticked) in 1c. Ask your partner questions using Would you like to...?

Would you like to learn to windsurf?)

(Yes, I would. / No, I wouldn't.



4 VOCABULARY verbs that take the infinitive

a Look at ten verbs which take the infinitive. Which one is irregular? Which one can be regular or irregular?

decide forget hope learn need plan promise remember try want

b Complete the sentences with a verb from **a** in the past tense.

1	He <u>wanted</u>	to know how much the salary was.	
_			

- 2 It was my mum's birthday yesterday luckily I ______ to buy her a present!
- 3 They looked at some destinations on the internet and finally they _____ to go to Sicily.

4 Oh no! I ______ to lock the door!

5 I _____ hard to open the bottle, but I couldn't.

6 She _____ to swim when she was eight years old.

7 We ______ to have good weather, but unfortunately it rained.

8 My neighbour ______ to look after my plants while I was on holiday.

9 We _____ to have dinner outside, but sadly it was too cold.

10 I went to the bank because I ______ to talk to the manager.

5 SPEAKING

Work in pairs. Take turns.

- A Tell your partner about the things below.
- B Respond to what A says. Ask questions.
- A Answer, then ask What about you?

a country you want to go to

something you would like to learn to do

something you **need to do** tomorrow

a holiday you are planning to have soon

a famous person you hope to meet one day

a film you want to see soon

a dangerous sport you would like to try

something you **need to buy** soon

a singer or group you hope to see one day

a change you are planning to make to your lifestyle

I really want to go New Zealand.

Oh yes? Why New Zealand?

Because I have a cousin there. What about you?

(I want to go to Cuba...

5 WRITING

- a Write your own bucket list of five things you would like to do this year.
- b Compare your list with a partner. Did you choose any of the same things? Is there anything on his / her list that you'd like to add to yours?

How smart is your phone?

What do you use your phone for the most?

I take photos and I play games.

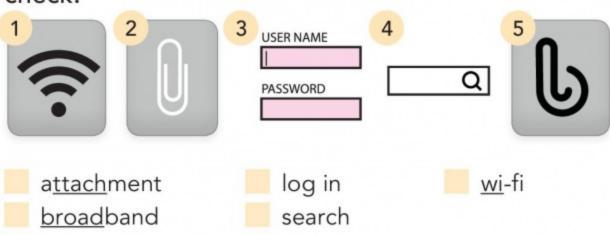
G definite article: the or no the V phones and the internet P the

VOCABULARY phones and the internet

Look at the phone screen below. How many of the apps and functions do you have on your phone?



- Match icons in a to activities 1–13. Which can you use when you aren't online?
 - 1 share a photo (on a social media website)
 - 2 download an app
 - 3 Skype a friend
 - 4 send a text message
 - 5 upload a video
 - 6 message a friend
- 7 post a tweet
- 8 send an email
- 9 take a photo
- 10 get directions
- 11 read a book
- 12 get fitter
- 13 listen to a song
- 11.9 Listen and repeat activities 1–13.
- 11.10 Match the words and pictures. Listen and check.



LISTENING & SPEAKING

- 11.11 Listen to three people (A–C) talking about their phones. What's the first thing they say they use their phones for?
- Listen again. Which speaker (A–C)...?
 - doesn't want the newest phone
 - often checks train times on his / her phone
 - doesn't have an iPhone
 - prefers normal books to e-books
 - likes playing games on his / her phone
 - gets a new phone when the contract lets him / her
 - uses an app to organize his / her money
 - has an app that he / she only uses at night
 - uses an app to help with his / her diet

Answer the questions with a partner.

- 1 What phone do you have? How often do you change phones?
- 2 What three things do you do the most on it?
- 3 Is there anything in the list in 1b that you never do on your phone? Why not?
- 4 Do you have any apps apart from the ones in 1a that you use a lot? What are they?
- 5 Do you have any unusual apps on your phone? What are they?

READING

- Look at photos 1–6. What can you see?
- Read the article and check. What did people use each thing for?
- Talk to a partner. Do you do any of these things? How often? Why (not)?

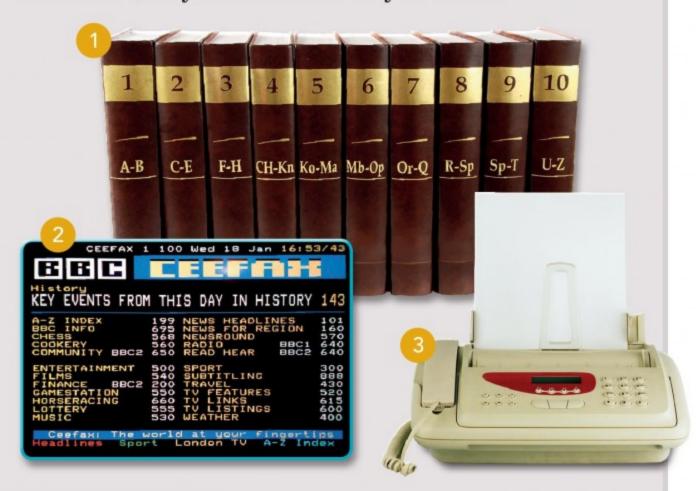
go to the bank go to travel agents buy CDs look sth up in an encyclopaedia use phone boxes buy stamps look at paper maps write by hand read printed books

(I never go to the bank. I do everything with a banking app.

Yellow Pages

Life before the internet

This morning in the office somebody mentioned 'teletext'. 'What's that?' our intern Francesca asked. She genuinely had no idea. For all of you who are too young to remember, teletext was sort of like a very, very basic internet on your TV. After that conversation, we started to remember life before the internet. Can you remember any of these?

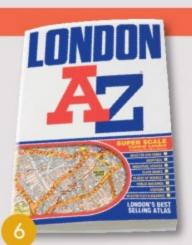


FAX MACHINES Sending an email is so easy these days, but some years ago, when you needed to send something to somebody urgently and the post was too slow, you sent a fax. When they were introduced in the 1970s people thought they were a technological miracle. 'You can print something and send it over the phone in seconds! Magic!'

THE YELLOW PAGES If you needed to book an appointment with your hairdresser or phone a local Chinese takeaway, what did you do? You looked up the phone number or address in a big fat yellow book – the Yellow Pages. Amazingly, it still exists online.

ENCYCLOPAEDIAS When you needed information for your studies, or to win an argument, you looked it up in an enormous encyclopaedia – sometimes ten or twelve books of information in alphabetical order. Some people had them at home, or they went to a library.

WALKMANS This is how we listened to music. A Walkman was a lot heavier than an MP3 player! And if you didn't have the cassette or CD of a song, you couldn't listen to it.



AN A–Z If you had a meeting or job interview, or you wanted to go to a new restaurant in a part of town you didn't know, what did you always take with you? Your A–Z book of maps. And your reading glasses to read the street names, because they were so small!

Adapted from the British press

4 GRAMMAR definite article

- a Look at the three sentences. Do you agree? Say why (not).
 - Men use the internet more than women.
 - The best place for children to learn how to use new technology is at school.
 - It's bad manners to use your phone when you're having lunch or dinner.
- **b** Look at the sentences in **a** again. Complete the rules with 'Use the' or 'Don't use the'.

1	before superlatives.
2	when you talk about people or
	things in general.
3	before meals and some general
	places, e.g. lunch, work, university.
4	when there is only one of
	something (sun, world, etc.).

© p.144 Grammar Bank 11C

5 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING the

a 11.13 Listen to the phrases below. How is the pronounced in the two groups? Why?

1 the alphabet 2 the centre the end the sun the internet the world

- **b** Practise saying the phrases.
- c Work in pairs. A choose a circle, think of three things, places, etc. and tell B. B respond and ask for more information. Then change roles. Be careful to only use the when it's necessary!

I think women like shopping, but men don't.

(I'm not sure. I'm a man and I like shopping!



good ways

you can travel

around your

town / city

things you do before you go to work / school

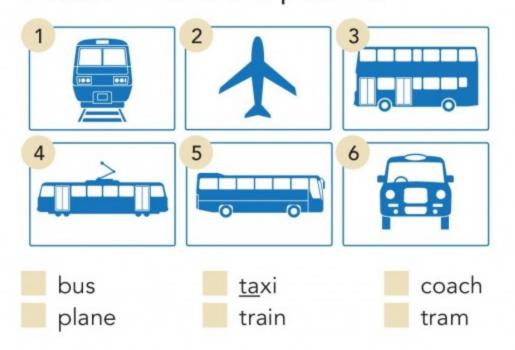
Practical English Going home

getting to the airport **V** public transport

JENNY'S LAST MORNING



- 11.14 Watch or listen to Rob and Jenny. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
 - 1 Rob arrives late.
 - 2 He has a coffee with Jenny.
 - 3 Jenny has bad news for him.
 - 4 Rob thinks A writer in New York is a good name for a column.
 - 5 Rob needs time to think.
- **b** Watch or listen again. Say why the **F** sentences are false.
- **VOCABULARY** public transport
- Match the words and pictures.



11.15 Watch or listen and check. Then cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.

c Complete the headings with a word from a.

You get one at a ~ rank. They are also called cabs. People usually give the driver a tip (= some extra money, about 5-10%). In London they are black.

You get one at an airport. First you have to check in. Then you go through Security to the Departure lounge. Finally you go to your Gate.

You get one at a station. You normally need to get a ticket first. Then you need to find

the right platform. Some go underground in big cities. In London, this is called the Tube.

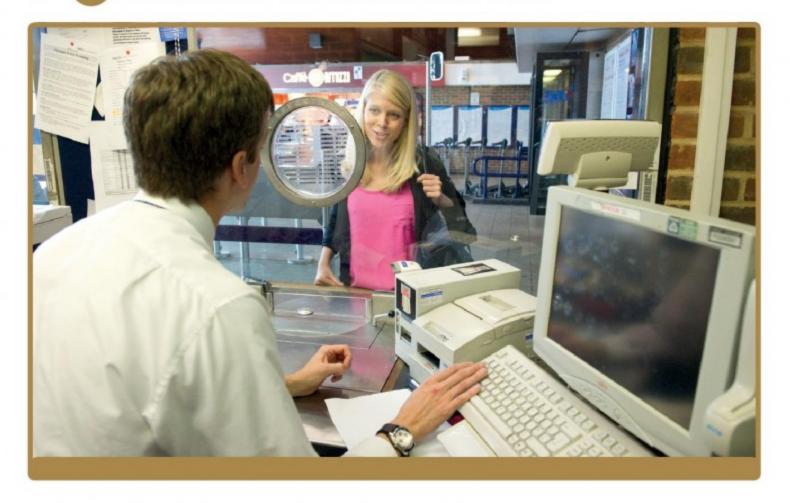
You get one at a ~ station or a ~ stop. Intercity ones are also called coaches.

You can buy a ticket in advance or sometimes you can pay the driver.

In London they are red.

Cover the facts and look at the headings. Try to remember two facts about each type of public transport.

GETTING TO THE AIRPORT



11.16 Watch or listen to Jenny's three conversations. How does she get to the airport?





b Watch or listen again. Complete the You hear phrases.

You say	You hear
Could you call me a taxi, please?	Yes, of course. 1 to?
To Paddington Station.	And when would you like it ² ?
Now, please.	
How much is it?	That's £ ³ , please.
Make it £15. And could I have a receipt?	Thank you very much, 4
Could I have a ticket to Heathrow Airport, please?	Single or ⁵ ?
Single, please.	Standard or 6 class?
Standard, please.	That's £18.
Can I pay by credit card?	Yes, of ⁷

- c 11.17 Watch or listen and repeat the You say phrases. Copy the <u>rhy</u>thm.
- d Practise the conversation with a partner.
- e in pairs, role-play the conversation. Then change roles.
 - A (book open) You are the receptionist, the taxi driver, and the ticket clerk. The taxi costs £11.60. The ticket costs £18.90.
 - **B** (book closed) You want to get a taxi to Victoria Station, and then a train to Gatwick Airport. Begin Could you call me a taxi, please?

4 SAYING GOODBYE

- a 11.18 Watch or listen and complete what happens.
 - 1 Jenny is worried because...
 - 2 Rob goes to the airport because...
 - 3 Rob tells Jenny that he wants to...
 - 4 Eddie isn't going to meet Jenny in New York because...
 - 5 Rob is pleased because Eddie is...
 - 6 Jenny needs to go because...
- b Look at the Social English phrases. Who says them: Jenny or Rob?



- c 11.19 Watch or listen and check. Then watch or listen and repeat the phrases.
- d Complete conversations A–E with Social English phrases 1–5. Practise with a partner.

Α		Yes, see you there! It's going to be great!
В	Excuse me, is this your bag? It was under the chair.	Oh, yes it is. I'm usually so careful.
С	Is everything OK?	Yes, everything's great!
D	There are no taxis. At Heathrow!	Oh no. How are we going to get to the hotel?
E	Bye. Phone me when you get there.	Don't worry! Bye.

CAN YOU...?

- ask for a taxi
- buy a ticket on public transport
- use common phrases, e.g. Have a good journey, See you in (New York), etc.

2 1've seen it ten times!

Have you seen Game of Thrones?

No, but I've read the books.

G present perfect V irregular past participles P sentence stress

GRAMMAR present perfect

- Look at the photos from two films and a TV series. Can you match them to the books?
- 12.1 Listen to three conversations. Complete them with the phrases below.

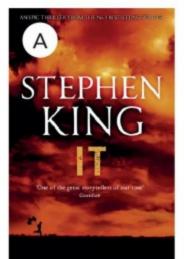
I've read the book I haven't seen it Have you seen it No, I haven't Yes, I have

1	Paul	The first Jurassic Park is on TV tonight. Have you seen it? And The film's better than the book, I think. Let's watch it then. I know it's an old film, but I haven't seen it.
2	Matt Tom Matt Tom	Have you read the Game of Thrones books' They're really long! Life's too short for 700-page books! Have you watched the TV series? Yes, I've watched the first three seasons, and I've downloaded the fourth.
3	Ann Mike Ann Mike	Have you seen the film It? The recent one. Is it the film of the Stephen King book? Yes. I've heard of it, but I've read the book – it's fantastic.

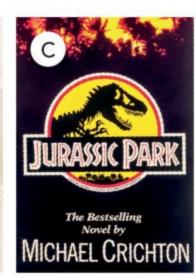
Listen to and read the conversations again. Complete the chart for read, and answer the questions with a partner.

+	I've read	the book.
		the book.
?		the book?
?		the book

- 1 What is the full form of I've read?
- 2 How do you think have and haven't change in the third person singular?
- 3 Seen, read, and heard are irregular past participles. What are the infinitives?
- 4 Watched and downloaded are regular past participles. What are the infinitives?
- 5 When Tom says I've watched the first three seasons, do we know when he watched them?













 Complete 1–10 with a past participle from the list of regular verbs.

act ask believe book download kill open play travel work

I've never...

- 1 <u>opened</u> a bank account.2 _____ a flight online.
- 3 _____ in a play or film.
- 4 _____ a team sport.
- 5 _____ an insect.
- 6 _____ as a waiter.
- 7 _____ in Father Christmas.
- 8 _____ somebody to marry me.
- 9 _____ to another continent.
- 10 _____ a film or music without paying.
- f With a partner, say which sentences are true for you.

2 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

- a ① 12.3 Listen and repeat the conversation. Copy the <u>rhy</u>thm.
 - A Have you seen The Martian?
 - B No, I haven't.
 - A Have you read the book?
 - B Yes, I have. I've read it twice.
- **b** Write down three more films or TV series from books. Have conversations with a partner as in **a**.

3 VOCABULARY irregular past participles

a Look at the past participles. Which verbs are they from? Write the infinitive and the past simple.

	infinitive	past simple	past participle
1	buy	bought	bought
2			fallen
3			given
4			heard
5			left
6			read
7			seen
8			told

b 12.4 Listen and check. How do you say read (infinitive) and read (past simple and past participle)?

- c 12.5 Cover a. Listen and say the past simple and past participle.
 -)) buy (bought, bought
- d Complete the **Verb** column with a past participle from **a**.

		Verb
1	Have you ever a Japanese novel?	
2	Ben's in love with Sally.	
3	Have you Mike about the party?	
4	We've the news – congratulations!	
5	She's never X-Men.	
6	Tim's some tickets for the match.	
7	Oh no! I've my bag on the train.	
8	I've my old computer to my brother.	

e Cover the Verb column. Say the sentences.

4 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a Complete the phrases with the past participle of the verb in brackets.

Films, bo	ooks, and TV
Have you	ever?
1	asleep in the cinema (fall)
2	the soundtrack of a film (buy)
3	the cinema before the end of a film (leave)
4	a film more than three times (see)
5	in a film (cry)
6	a film in English with subtitles (see)
7	somebody to be quiet in a cinema (tell)
8	a book more than once (read)
9	watching a TV series after the first or
	second season (stop)
10	to an audiobook (listen)
11	a book to a friend as a present (give)
12	three or more episodes of a TV series in
	one evening (watch)

- **b** 12.6 Listen to six people, A–F. Which question (1–12) in **a** does each person answer?
 - Listen again. Make notes about their answers.
- d Choose six of the questions in **a**. Ask a different person each question. If they answer Yes, I have.,
 - ask What film / book / TV series was it? Write their name and answer.
- Tell the class your two most interesting answers.

He's been everywhere!

Have you been to the new Thai restaurant?

Yes, I have. went there last week.

G present perfect or past simple? V learning irregular verbs P irregular past participles



LISTENING

Look at the list of ten popular types of foreign restaurant in the UK. Answer the questions.

Chinese French Greek Indian Italian Japanese Mexican Spanish Thai Turkish

- 1 Which do you think are the top three?
- 2 Which of these kinds of food have you eaten?
- 3 What are the most popular types of foreign restaurant where you live?
- b 12.7 Listen to four people trying to decide where to go for dinner. Do they agree which restaurant to go to?
- Listen again. Tick (✓) the restaurants Joe has been to, and write when. Write? if he doesn't say when.

	Has he been there?	When?
Curry Up		
The Great Wall		
Thai-Chi		
Mexican Wave		
The Acropolis		

Do you know any annoying people like Joe?

GRAMMAR present perfect or past simple?

Look at part of the conversation in 1. Answer the questions.

Have you been to Mexican Wave? Yes, I have. Joe Alison When did you go there? Last month. I went for dinner with people Joe

from work.

- 1 What tense is Alison's first question?
- 2 What tense is Alison's second question?
- 3 Which of the two questions is about a specific time in the past?

G p.146 Grammar Bank 12B

- Write down the names of two restaurants you've been to recently, two films you've seen recently, and two places you've visited recently.
- In pairs, ask and answer questions.

Have you been to...?)

(Yes, I have.

When did you go there? Did you like it?)

3 VOCABULARY learning irregular verbs

a 12.10 Write the infinitives for the irregular verbs. Then listen and check.

infiniti	ive past simple / past participle
1	got
2	had
3	lost
4	met
5	won

b 12.11 Now look at some verbs where the past participle is different from the past simple. Write the infinitive and the past simple. Then listen and check.

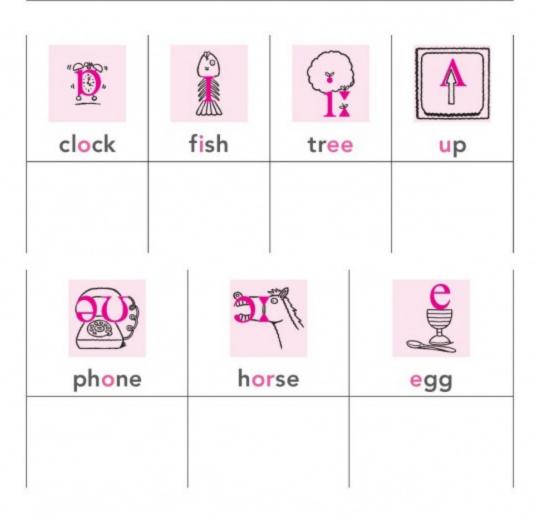
	infinitive	past simple	past participle
1		_	been
2			done
3			eaten
4			spoken
5			sung

c p.165 Irregular verbs <u>Underline</u> the verbs that have the same form for the past simple and the past participle.

4 PRONUNCIATION irregular past participles

a Put the irregular past participles in the correct column.

bought done eaten fallen given got left lost met read seen spoken sung won



b 12.12 Listen and check. Practise saying them.

5 SPEAKING

a Look at question 1 below. What words are missing in the present perfect question? What form do you need of the verb in **bold**? What words are missing in the past simple question?

Recently...

	Present perfect	Past simple
1	/ be to the cinema recently?	What / see? / like it?
2	/ do any sport or exercise recently?	What / do? Who / do it with?
3	/ eat out with friends recently?	Where / go? What / have?
4 [].∃□ _{RM}	/ get up really late recently?	Why? / miss anything important?
5	/ buy anything online recently?	What / buy? Where / buy it from?

In your life...

	Present perfect	Past simple
1	/ ever sing something in public?	What / sing? How / feel?
2	/ ever lose your phone?	Where / lose it? / find it?
3 7 8	/ ever win a cup or medal?	What / win it for?
4	/ ever speak to a famous person?	Who / speak to? What / say?
5	/ ever have very long (or short) hair?	When / have it? / like it?

b Work in pairs. **A** ask **B** the questions. If **B** answers *Yes, I have.*, ask the past simple questions. Then change roles.

Have you been to the cinema recently? Yes, I have. What did you see?

G revision: question formation

1 READING

- a Look at the photos of Sir Ian McKellen. Do you know the names of any films he has been in? Have you seen any of them?
- b Sir Ian McKellen was interviewed especially for English File. Read the interview and complete sections A–F with a heading from the list.

Your abilities
Your work experiences
Your home
Your lifestyle
Your places
Your home

- c Look at sentences 1–10 about Sir Ian McKellen. Some are true and some are false. In which section of the interview do you expect to find the information?
 - 1 He became an actor when he was a student.
 - 2 He lives outside London.
 - 3 He gets up early every day.
 - 4 He's never been to India.
 - 5 He spends a long time on the internet every day.
 - 6 He read The Lord of the Rings when he was young.
 - 7 His desk isn't very tidy.
 - 8 He doesn't like animals.
 - 9 He relaxes by playing games.
 - 10 He's not interested in learning new things.
- d Read the interview again and mark the sentences
 T (true) or F (false). Say why the F ones are false.
- e Talk to a partner. What three things from the interview with Sir Ian McKellen did you find the most interesting?

2 GRAMMAR & SPEAKING revision: question formation

a In pairs, look at the groups of questions (1–6).
Complete them with 's, are, can, do, did, or have.

1	Your lifestyle	
	What do	you usually do in the morning?
	How	you relax?
	What	you do last weekend?
2	Your home	
	What	your favourite room in your home?
	yo	u tidy or untidy?
		u do a lot of housework last week?
	- ,	



An interview with

Sir Ian McKellen

A Your tastes

What kind of music do you like? I hardly ever listen to music at home – I prefer going to concerts. I enjoy classical music and pop, but my favourite kind of music is traditional American jazz.

What book are you reading at the moment? I'm reading *The Hammersteins*, a biography of the American theatre family written by Oscar Andrew Hammerstein.

Who's your favourite historical character? Perhaps William Shakespeare.

3	Your abilities What languages you speak? you sing or play a musical instrument? Why you learning English?
4	Your places What your favourite place to spend the weekend? Where you go for your last holiday? Where you going to go for your next holiday?
5	Your tastes What your favourite time of year? What book you reading at the moment? What kind of TV programmes you like watching?
6	Your experiences What films you seen recently? What the most beautiful place you've ever been to? you ever been to Britain or the USA?

В

What time do you usually get up in the morning? If I am working, I get up one hour before I have to leave the house. If I am not working, and I went to bed late the night before, I get up at about 10.00 in the morning.

How much time do you spend a day on the internet? I can very easily spend three or four hours on the internet, answering emails, reading the news, etc. I think of the internet as a wonderful encyclopaedia of information.

How do you relax? I enjoy a late-night Sudoku, but especially being with friends.



What's your favourite room in the house? Perhaps the living room where I cook and eat, and from where I can see the River Thames in London.

What do you always have on your desk? I always have too many letters, papers, and books which are waiting for me to read.

Do you have any pets? I love dogs, but I can't have one because I'm often away from home.



What languages do you speak? I only speak English, but I can remember a little of the French I learned at school.

Can you play a musical instrument? No.

Is there something you would like to learn to do? Yes – many things, e.g. to sing well, to play the piano, and to speak foreign languages.



What's your favourite place in London? I love the River Thames and the views from its many bridges.

Where are you going to go for your next holiday? I am going to go to India for the first time in February.

What's the most beautiful city you've ever visited? I can't choose between Edinburgh, Prague, and Venice.

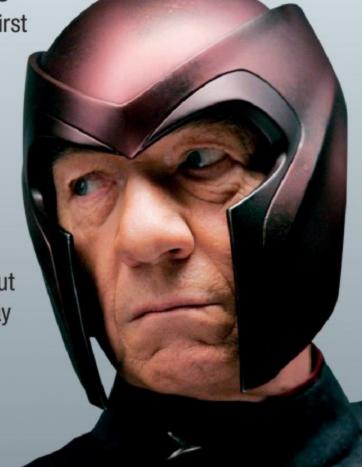


What was your first job? The first money I earned as a professional actor was when I was a student at Cambridge University in 1959.

I played small parts in audio recordings of Shakespeare's plays.

When did you first read *The*Lord of the Rings? I read it first
when I was preparing to play
Gandalf in the movie trilogy.

What was the best and worst thing about filming The Lord of the Rings? The best thing about filming was discovering the countryside and people of New Zealand. But the worst thing was living away from home for a year or more.



c Work with a partner.

A interview B with group 1. Ask more questions where appropriate, and show interest in B's answers.

B answer the questions, giving as much information as you can. Then **B** interview **A** with group 2, etc.

A What do you usually do in the morning?

B I get up at about 7.00. I have breakfast and then I go to class at university.

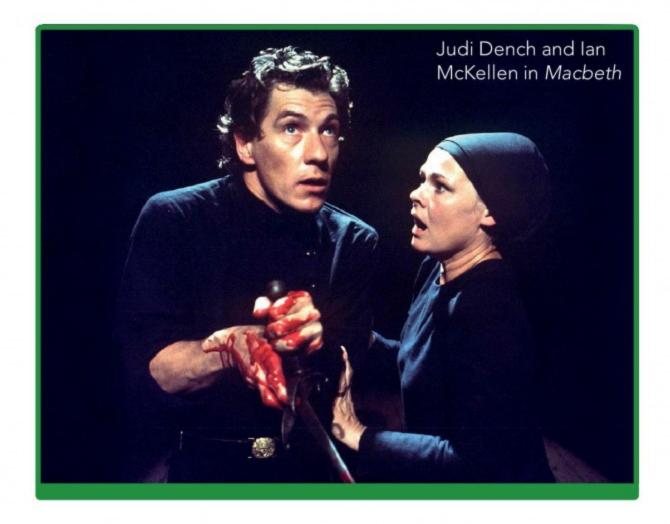
A What time do your classes start?

(B At 8.00.

3 D VIDEO LISTENING

a Watch the documentary Judi Dench – a life in acting. Tick (✓) the six films you hear. Have you seen any of them?

Macbeth A Room with a View Tea with Mussolini Henry V GoldenEye Mrs Brown Skyfall Shakespeare in Love



- b Watch again. Put the events in the correct order.
 - She appeared in A Room with a View.
 - She played Queen Elizabeth I.
 - She worked with the Royal Shakespeare Company.
 - 1 She was born in York.
 - She appeared in her first James Bond film.
 - She acted in the York Mystery Plays.
 - She played Queen Victoria in the film Mrs Brown.
 - She was in a production of *Macbeth* with Ian McKellen.
 - She won an Oscar.
- c Are there any famous actors from your country who are the same generation as Judi Dench and Ian McKellen? Do you like them?

12 Revise and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle	a, b, or c.
1	You speak
	a very slow b very slowly c very slower
2	She plays tennis
	a quite well b quite good c quite
0	goodly
3	My husband works
	 a incredible hard b incredibly hard c incredibly hardly
1	I'd like a Ferrari.
7	a drive b to drive c driving
5	What do we need next?
	a to do b do c doing
6	She wants to pass her exams, but she
	doesn't like
	a study b studing c studying
7	usually drive faster than women.
	a The men b Men c The man
8	It's best place to eat in the city centre.
0	a the bac-
9	Do you go to bed late at weekends? a the b a c -
10	
10	My grandfather never uses internet. a the b a c -
11	I've read the book, but I the film.
	a haven't see b haven't saw
	c haven't seen
12	A Have you anyone famous?
	B Yes, I have. A famous film actor.
	a ever met b ever meet c met ever
13	he been to New York?
	a Has b Did c Have
14	We to Italy last year.
4.5	a have gone b have been c went
15	She in a restaurant before.
	a has never work b have never worked

VOCABULARY

Write the opposite adjective or adverb.

		1.5	
1	quickly	_	
2	safe	_	
3	well	_	
4	noisy	_	
5	hot		
6	weakly		

c has never worked

b Complete the sentences with these verbs.

ne	eed	learn	promise	want	
1	ľd l	ike to _		to dance the tango.	
2	You	don't_		to wash it. You've only worn it o	once.
3	I ca	n't	to	be on time. It depends on the tr	affic.
4	Do	you	to	go to a restaurant or a pub for	lunch?

c Complete the sentences with these internet words.

	attachment download online website wi-fi
	1 I always shop these days.
	2 I can the song for you tonight.
	3 You can find all the information on the hotel's
	4 Don't open an if you don't know who it's from.
	5 I can't Skype you – our isn't working at the moment.
d	Complete the sentences with for, in, up, or with.

1	Log	with your username and password.
2	I looked 1996.	Coldplay on Wikipedia – the band started in
3	You can search.	most information on the internet.
4	Have you ever s	een a film subtitles?

e Write the past participle of these verbs.

1	see	saw	4	give	gave	
2	go	went	5	fall	fell	
3	know	knew	6	take	took	

PRONUNCIATION

- Pp.166-7 Sound Bank Revise vowel and consonant sounds.
- **b** What sound do the pink letters have in these words? Match them to the sound pictures.



- Under<u>line</u> the stressed syllable.
 - 3 de cide 1 politely 5 web|site 2 dan ge rously 4 a ttach ment

CAN YOU understand this text?

Read the reviews of Pizza West once. Which review is most positive and which is most negative?







ALAN

I go here quite often because it's very near my flat. The pizza is OK, and it's really good value. The atmosphere is

great, perfect for a Friday or Saturday night. It's very popular, but if you don't mind waiting you can usually get a table. Or book online!





STEVE AND JANE

Very expensive. In most pizza places we usually pay about £10 for a pizza; here it's £15 for more or less the same

thing! The food is fine, but we definitely aren't going to eat there again.





SARAH

We've been here a lot and we always enjoy it. The menu is very good, and they have great starters as well as

pizzas. We went yesterday for an early dinner with our three-year-old daughter and they really made us feel at home – and they produced a delicious birthday cake for her. Great food, friendly waiters, fantastic atmosphere.





BRIDGET

We booked a table, but when we got there they asked us to sit with a lot of other people at a big table. We didn't

want to because there were only two of us. Then they asked us to wait until a different table was free, so we waited at the bar for 45 minutes! But I recommend it because the food is excellent!





GEORGE

The pizza here isn't the best I've tasted, but it's OK (and the salads are delicious). The service is a bit slow and

the place is very busy – it can often be really noisy. However, the atmosphere is great and it's obviously popular. Not the place for a romantic dinner – it's more of a fun, exciting place.

b Read the reviews again. Match them to the sentences. Who (A-E)...?

- 1 ____ says the staff are nice
- 2 ____ says the food is too expensive
- 3 ____ says they have had better pizzas
- lives near the restaurant
- didn't like the table when they arrived
- 6 ____ went for a special family meal
- 7 ____ thinks the prices are good
- 8 ____ doesn't recommend it for couples who want a quiet dinner

CAN YOU understand these people?

12.14 Watch or listen and answer the questions.











Anna

Madeleine

Chris

Talitha

Martin

- 1 When Anna came to the UK she was surprised by ____.
 - a the people and the buildings
 - b the weather and the food
 - c the parks and the attractions
- 2 Madeleine thinks that she drives ____ other people from her area of the USA.
 - a better than b worse than c the same as
- 3 Chris would like to ____ soon.
 - c visit her parents a go to Australia
 - **b** go to Austria
- 4 Talitha has seen the ____ films more than three times.
 - a Harry Potter b Lord of the Rings c Jason Bourne
- 5 Martin bought his phone ____ years ago.
 - b three a two
- c four

CAN YOU say this in English?

Do the tasks with a partner. Tick (✔) the box if you can do these things.

Can you...?

- say how people in your country drive and dress
- say three things you would like to do in the future
- 3 say which of the following you prefer and why
 - classical music or pop music
 - summer holidays or winter holidays
 - · Chinese food or Japanese food
- say what things you use the internet for, and how often
- answer the questions below
 - What city have you been to recently?
 - When did you go there? What did you do there?
 - What's the best / worst thing about your town?

Communication

1B WHERE ARE THEY FROM?

Student A

a Look at the chart. Take turns to ask and answer the questions about each person. Ask about person 1. Then answer **B** about person 2.



(Where in (country)?



Name	Masako	Ali	Carlo
From		Turkey Ankara	



Name	Maria	Lilla	Oliver
From	Mexico Acapulco		Germany Berlin

b Repeat for the other people.

1C WHAT'S HIS / HER REAL NAME?

Student A

a Look at list 1. Read the names of your four people. Two are their real names and two aren't. Cross (X) the names you think are not their real names.



b Talk to **B**. Check your answers to **a**. Write the real name next to the photo.

Is _____ his / her real name?)

What's his / her real name? How do you spell it?)

c Now look at list 2 and answer B's questions.

2A IN, ON, UNDER Student A

a Where are these things? Ask B. Draw them in the correct place in picture 1.

charger glasses keys laptop scissors umbrella wallet

Where's the charger?) (It's in the...

- **b** Look at picture 2. Answer **B**'s questions.
- c Now compare your pictures. Are all the things in the correct place?



2B THE SAME OR DIFFERENT? Student A

- a Describe picture 1 to B. Is your picture the same or different? Write S or D on the picture. Then listen to B describe picture 2, etc. Find eight differences.
 - A Number 1. It's an old house.

(B In my picture it's a new house. They're different.

b Compare your pictures and check.



2C WHAT'S THE MATTER?

Student A

- a Have this conversation in pairs.
 You are A.
 - A What's the matter?
 - B I'm sad.
 - A Cheer up.
 - B OK.
- b Have four more conversations. Ask What's the matter? B answers. Then choose a phrase below.

Don't worry. It's not a problem. Have a holiday. Open the window. Have a drink.

- c Change roles. B asks What's the matter? Answer with 1 below. B responds. Then respond, e.g. Thanks, OK, Good idea, etc.
 - 1 (I'm bored.
 - 2 (I'm cold.
 - 3 (I'm tired.
 - 4 (I'm hungry.
- d Have all eight conversations again. Try to do them from memory.

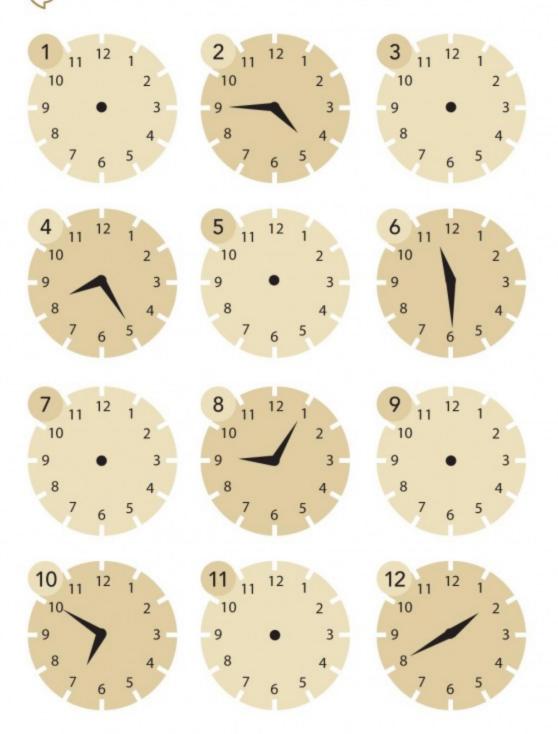
digi ZABAN

PE2 WHAT'S THE TIME?

Student A

Ask and answer questions with **B** and complete the times on the clocks. Then compare your clocks.

(Clock 1: What's the time?/What time is it?



4C SHORT LIFE, LONG LIFE?

Students A+B

Interview your partner. **A** ask the questions in the questionnaire. **B** answer and give more information if you can. Then change roles.

How often do you...?

1 have breakfast

- a hardly ever / never
- b sometimes / usually
- c always

2 eat fresh fruit and vegetables

- a hardly ever / never
- b once a day
- c three times a day

3 eat fast food

- a often
- b sometimes, not often
- c hardly ever / never

4 do exercise

- a hardly ever / never
- b once or twice a week
- c three or four times a week

5 feel tired or stressed

- a always / often
- b sometimes
- c hardly ever / never

6 drink alcohol

- a every day
- b sometimes
- c hardly ever / never

7 see your friends

- a sometimes
- b often
- c very often

How many...?

8 hours do you usually sleep a day

- a 0 to 4
- b 5 to 6
- c 7 to 9

9 cups of coffee do you drink a day

- a more than five
- b usually only one or two
- c I don't drink coffee.

10 Which of these is true for you?

- a I'm not very positive about life.
- b I'm usually positive about life.
- c I'm always positive about life.

Now calculate your partner's score.

a = 5 b = 7 c = 10

Total score = number of years you live

4C IKARIA Student A

- a Read the article about Ikaria and answer the questions.
 - 1 Where is Ikaria?
 - 2 What do the people eat and drink?
 - 3 What exercise do they do?
 - 4 What do they do after lunch?
 - 5 Is Ikaria a safe place? How do you know?
 - 6 Do they have a good social life? What examples does the article give?
 - 7 What do people call the island?
- b Listen to B describe life in Nicoya.
- c Tell B about life in Ikaria. Use your answers to questions 1–7. What do the two places have in common?

Ikaria, Greece

Ikaria is a small Greek island near the coast of Turkey. How do the people there live? They eat a lot of beans, potatoes, and green vegetables, and they sometimes eat fish, but they hardly ever eat red meat or sugar. They drink a lot of herbal tea, but they also drink some red wine every evening with their dinner. They do a lot of exercise, but they never go to a gym. They work in their gardens, and they walk everywhere – not many people in Ikaria have a car. They also have a siesta every afternoon.

Ikaria is a very safe place. In the village of Raches, the police station is closed. The people say they don't need police. People also have a very good social life. The island is famous for its tradition of *panagiria*, or festivals. Between May and October, the island has between two and four festivals every week,

where people eat, drink, and dance all night. They call Ikaria 'the island where people forget to die'.

Glossary beans

herbal tea





5B SPOT THE DIFFERENCES Student A

You and B have the same picture but with eight differences.

- a Tell **B** what is happening in flats 1–4 and in the garden on the left. What is happening in **B**'s picture? Listen and circle the differences.
- **b** Listen to **B** describe what is happening in flats 5–8 and in the garden on the right. What is happening in your picture? Is it the same or different? Tell **B**. Circle the differences.
- c When you finish, compare the two pictures.



5C WHAT DO YOU DO? WHAT ARE YOU DOING NOW? Student A

a Ask B your questions.

What do you do?
What are you doing now?
Are you wearing a watch today?
Do you usually wear a watch?
What kind of books do you usually read?
What are you reading at the moment?

b Answer **B**'s questions.

6A READING IN ENGLISH Students A+B

Interview your partner.

What kind of things do you read in your own language?

a books e work documents

b newspapers f film subtitles or song lyrics

c magazines g other (what?)

d websites

When and where do you usually read?

a at work / school

b when you are on a bus or train

c on holiday

d before you go to bed

Do you ever need to read in English? What?

Reading in English

Reading Graded Readers, e.g. the *Oxford Bookworms* series, helps you to learn and remember vocabulary and grammar. Buy or borrow a Starter (A1) or Stage 1 (A2/B1) level book with audio.

8A POLICE INTERVIEW Student A

Work in pairs with another **A**. You are police officers. There was a robbery last night. **B** and **B** are your suspects. They are friends. They say that they went out for dinner and went to the cinema last night. You want to know if this is true.

As look at the police interview form and prepare to ask the Bs the questions. Think of questions to get more details about the evening, e.g. What did you eat and drink? What film was it?

Name:		Date:	
	What time?	Where?	More details
/ meet?			
/ have dinner?			
/ go to the cinema?			
What / do a	after the cinem	a?	
What time	get home?		

- **b** Interview one of the **B**s. Write down his / her answers in the form. (Your partner interviews the other **B**.)
- c Compare with your partner. Did the two Bs tell exactly the same story? If not, arrest them!

8B IS THERE...? ARE THERE...? Student A

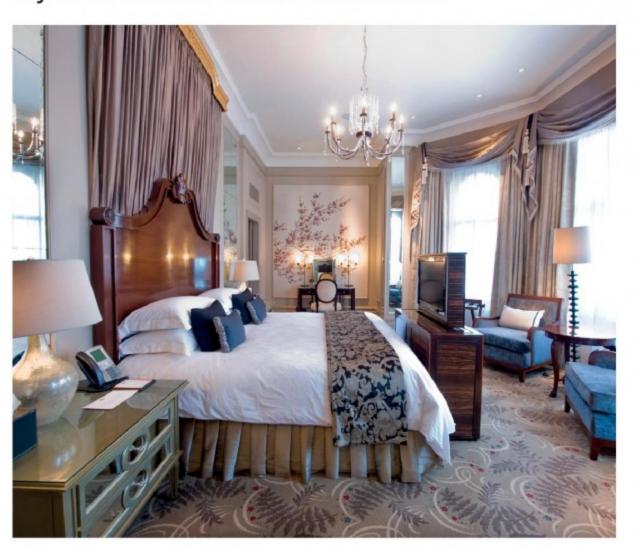
a Make questions with Is there a...? or Are there any...? to ask B.

Is there a bath in your bathroom?

- 1 bath in your bathroom
- 2 books in your living room
- 3 shops near your house
- 4 desk in your bedroom
- 5 dishwasher in your kitchen
- 6 supermarkets in your street
- **b** Answer **B**'s questions with Yes, there is / are. or No, there isn't / aren't.

8C ROOM 333 Student A

a Look at the photo of room 333 for one minute. Try to remember what's in the room.



b Ask B the questions.

/ a single or a double bed? (There was a double bed.)
How many tables / ? (There were three.)
/ a carpet on the floor? (Yes, there was.)
/ any armchairs? Where were they? (Yes, there were.
They were opposite the bed, next to the windows.)
/ any books in the room? (No, there weren't.)
What / over the bed? (There was a light.)

c Close your book. Answer B's questions.

9B SUGAR AND SALT Students A+B

How much sugar?

According to the American Heart Association, a woman should have **no more than 24g** (grams) of sugar a day (= 6 teaspoons) and a man **no more than 36g** (= 9 teaspoons).

- a can of Coke has approximately 35 g of sugar
- an apple has approximately 23 g of sugar
- a small (40 g) bar of dark chocolate has approximately 10 g of sugar
- · an egg doesn't have any sugar

How much salt?

According to UK Government studies, an adult should eat **no more than 6g** of salt a day.

- a large packet of crisps has approximately 3 g of salt
- a slice of white bread has approximately 0.5 g of salt
- a bottle of mineral water has approximately 0.0023 g of salt
- a bottle of olive oil doesn't have any salt

9C QUIZ NIGHT Student A

a Complete your sentences 1–8 with the comparative form of the **bold** adjectives.

1	small Spain is than France. (True. Spain is 505,000 square kilometres and France is 547,000.)
2	cold Alaska is than Greenland. (False. The minimum temperature in Alaska is62 degrees Celsius, but in Greenland it can be66 Celsius.)
3	old Oxford University is than Cambridge University. (True. Oxford University was founded in about 1170 and Cambridge 40 years later, in 1209.)
4	<pre>short The English alphabet is than the Arabic alphabet. (True. There are 26 letters in the English alphabet and 28 in the Arabic alphabet.)</pre>
5	expensive Taxis in Tokyo are than taxis in New York. (True. A 3km trip in Tokyo costs approximately \$16, but in New York it costs \$12.)
6	dry The Sahara Desert is than the Atacama Desert. (False. In the Sahara Desert the average rainfall is 25 mm and in the Atacama Desert it's 0.1 mm.)
7	far New Zealand is south than Australia. (True. It's about 2,000km south-east of Australia.)
8	hot The Earth is than the moon. (False. The temperature of the moon during the day can be 123 degrees Celsius, but the maximum temperature of the Earth is about 60 degrees Celsius.)

b Play Quiz Night. You are the presenter.

Read sentence 1 to **B**. **B** says 'true' or 'false'.

Tell **B** if he / she is right and give the extra information in brackets. If **B** is right, he / she wins £100.

Then read sentence 2 for £200, sentence 3 for £400, sentence 4 for £800, etc.

If **B** gets a question wrong, he / she loses all the money but continues to play. The prize starts again from £100.

c Play Quiz Night again. You are the contestant. Listen to B's sentences and answer. Who won more money?

10A I'M A TOURIST. HELP! Student A

a Imagine you are an English-speaking tourist in your town (or the nearest big town). B lives in the town. Ask B six questions about the town using superlative adjectives. Get as much information as you can.

What's the most beautiful square?

(I think it's the Piazza Navona.

Where is it?)

(It's in the centre, near the Pantheon. It has...

1 What's _______ square? (beautiful)

2 What's ______ way to get around? (easy)

3 What's ______ museum? (interesting)

4 What's ______ time of year to visit? (good)

5 What's ______ place to eat typical food? (nice)

b Then change roles. B is an English-speaking tourist in your town. Listen and answer his / her questions about the town. Explain everything very clearly and give as much information as you can!

6 What's _____ shopping street? (famous)

10B WHAT ARE YOU GOING TO DO?

Student A

a Ask **B** the questions below. Use going to.

Tonight

What / do after class? / study English? Why (not)?

Tomorrow

What time / get up tomorrow? Where / have lunch?

Next weekend

/ go away next weekend? Where to? What / do on Saturday night?

(What are you going to do after class?

b Answer **B**'s questions.

1B WHERE ARE THEY FROM?

Student B

a Look at the chart. Take turns to ask and answer the questions about each person. Answer A about person 1. Then ask about person 2.



(Where in (country)?



Name	Masako	Ali	Carlo
From	Japan Osaka		Italy Milan



Name	Maria	Lilla	Oliver
From		Hungary Budapest	

b Repeat for the other people.

1C WHAT'S HIS / HER REAL NAME?

Student B

a Look at list 2. Read the names of your four people. Two are their real names and two aren't. Cross (X) the names you think are **not** their real names.



- b Now look at list 1 and answer A's questions.
- c Talk to A. Check your answers to a. Write the real name next to the photo.

Is _____ his / her real name?

What's his / her real name? How do you spell it?)

2A IN, ON, UNDER Student B

Look at picture 1. Answer A's questions.

Where's the charger?) (It's in the...

b Where are these things? Ask A. Draw them in the correct place in picture 2.

file headphones magazine phone photo tissues watch

c Now compare your pictures. Are all the things in the correct place?



2B THE SAME OR DIFFERENT? Student B

- Listen to **A** describe picture 1. Is your picture the same or different? Write **S** or **D** on the picture. Then describe picture 2 to **A**, etc. Find eight differences.
 - B Number 2. They're expensive watches.

(A In my picture they're expensive watches, too. They're the same.

b Compare your pictures and check.



2C WHAT'S THE MATTER?

Student B

- a Have this conversation in pairs. You are B.
 - A What's the matter?
 - B I'm sad.
 - A Cheer up.
 - B OK.
- b Have four more conversations. A asks What's the matter? Answer with 1 below. A responds. Then respond, e.g. Thanks, OK, Good idea, etc.
 - 1 (I'm hot.
 - 2 (I'm thirsty.
 - 3 (I'm worried.
 - 4 (I'm stressed.
- Have four more conversations. Ask What's the matter?
 A answers. Then choose a phrase below.

Close the window. Have a sandwich. Read a book. Sit down.

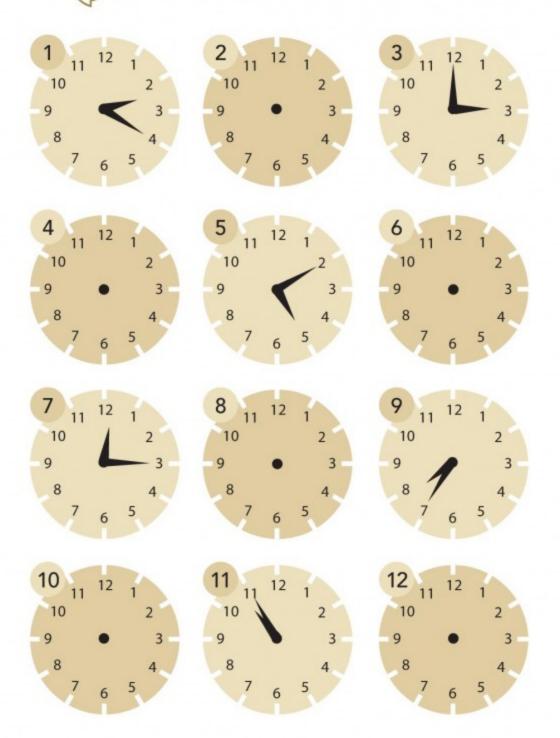
d Have all eight conversations again. Try to do them from memory.

PE2 WHAT'S THE TIME?

Student B

Ask and answer questions with **A** and complete the times on the clocks. Then compare your clocks.

(Clock 2: What's the time?/What time is it?



4C NICOYA Student B

- a Read the article about Nicoya and answer the questions.
 - 1 Where is Nicoya?
 - 2 What do people there do?
 - 3 What do they eat and drink?
 - 4 What exercise do they do?
 - 5 When do they get up and go to bed?
 - 6 How long do they sleep?
 - 7 What is a *plan de vida*? How does it make a difference to their lives?
- b Tell A about life in Nicoya. Use your answers to questions 1–7.
- c Listen to A describe life in Ikaria. What do the two places have in common?

Nicoya, Costa Rica

Nicoya in is the north-west of Costa Rica, near the border with Nicaragua. Most of the people who live there are farmers. In Nicoya people eat small meals. They usually have beans, rice, sweet potatoes, and sometimes a little meat, an egg, or some cheese. They also have some unusual fruits, for example the *marañón*, a fruit similar to an orange, with a lot of vitamin C. They drink a lot of water – the local water is unusually rich in calcium and magnesium.

They are very active during the day – they work outside, and they walk everywhere, or ride horses. They don't watch television and they don't use the internet, so they go to bed when it's dark and get up when it's light. They sleep well, usually eight hours a night.

All people in Nicoya have something called a *plan de vida*. It means 'a reason to get up every morning'. This may be work or family, and it's what makes even people who are over 100 still feel necessary.



5B SPOT THE DIFFERENCES Student B

You and A have the same picture but with eight differences.

- a Listen to A describe what is happening in flats 1–4 and in the garden on the left. What is happening in your picture? Is it the same or different? Tell A. Circle the differences.
- **b** Tell **A** what is happening in flats 5–8 and in the garden on the right. What is happening in **A**'s picture? Listen and circle the differences.
- c When you finish, compare the two pictures.



5C WHAT DO YOU DO? WHAT ARE YOU DOING NOW? Student B

- a Answer A's questions.
- b Ask A your questions.

are doing now?

Do your parents work? What do they do? Think of someone in your family. What do you think they

What kind of TV series do you like?

What TV series are you watching at the moment? Is it raining now?

Does it rain a lot at this time of year?

8A POLICE INTERVIEW Student B

Work in pairs with another **B**. You are friends. Last night you met, had dinner, and went to the cinema. There was a robbery last night. **A** and **A** are police officers. You are their suspects, and they want to interview you separately. If you both tell exactly the same story, you are innocent!

a Bs prepare your story. Answer these questions. Think of more details, e.g. What did you eat and drink? What film was it?

What time / Where did you meet?
What time / Where did you have dinner?
What time / Where did you go to the cinema?
What did you do after the cinema?
What time did you get home?

- b Answer A's questions. (Your partner answers the other A.)
- c Did you and your friend tell the same story?

8B IS THERE...? ARE THERE...? Student B

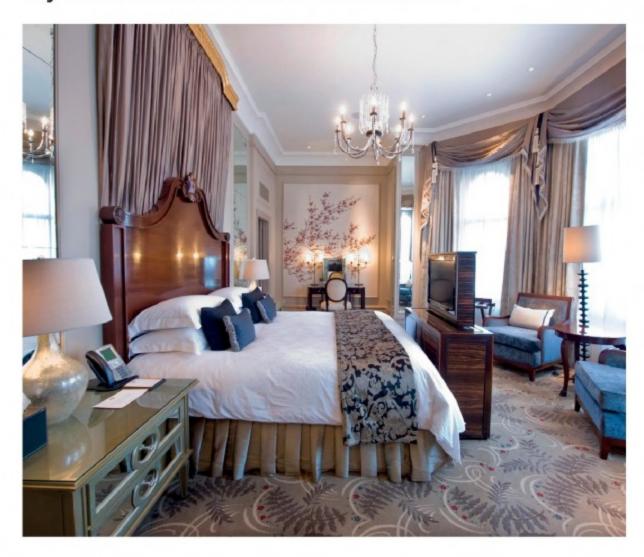
- a Answer A's questions with Yes, there is / are. or No, there isn't / aren't.
- b Make questions with Is there a...? or Are there any...? to ask A.

Is there a TV in your kitchen?)

- 1 TV in your kitchen
- 2 pictures in your classroom
- 3 park near your house
- 4 mirror in your living room
- 5 plants in your hall
- 6 shelves in your bedroom

8C ROOM 333 Student B

a Look at the photo of room 333 for one minute. Try to remember what's in the room.



- b Close your book. Answer A's questions.
- c Ask A the questions.

/ any plants or flowers in the room? (No, there weren't.)
/ a table between the armchairs? (Yes, there was.)
How many windows / ? (There were two.)
What / at the end of the bed? (There was a TV.)
/ a sofa? (No, there wasn't.)
/ a phone? Where was it? (Yes, there was. It was on the table next to the bed.)

9C QUIZ NIGHT Student B

a Complete your sentences 1–8 with the comparative form of the **bold** adjectives.

1	old The Great Wall of China is than the pyramids in Egypt. (False. The pyramids are about 4,500 years old, but the Great Wall of China was only finished 600 years ago.)
2	small Monaco is than San Marino. (<i>True. Monaco is 2km²</i> , but San Marino is 61 km².)
3	high The mountains on Earth are than the mountains on Mars. (False. Olympus Mons on Mars is about 24 km high, but Everest is only about 9 km high.)
4	big China is than Canada. (False. Canada is 10,000,000 km² and China is about 9,600,000 km².)
5	popular In the UK coffee is than tea. (False. On average, the British drink 165,000,000 cups of tea a day and 70,000,000 cups of coffee.)
6	large A gigabyte is than a megabyte. (True. A megabyte is 1,024 kilobytes and a gigabyte is 1,024 megabytes.)
7	warm The Mediterranean Sea is than the Red Sea. (False. The average temperature of the Mediterranean Sea is 19–20 degrees Celsius, but the average temperature of the Red Sea is 26–30 degrees Celsius.)
8	busy Heathrow Airport in London is than Atlanta Airport in the USA. (False. 100 million people a year travel through Atlanta, but only 70 million go through Heathrow.)

b Play Quiz Night. You are the contestant.

A reads you his / her sentence 1. Say if it's true or false.

A tells you if you are right and gives you extra information. If you are right, you win £100.

A then reads you his / her sentence 2 for £200, sentence 3 for £400, sentence 4 for £800, etc.

If you get a question wrong, you lose all the money but continue to play. The prize starts again from £100.

c Play Quiz Night again. You are the presenter. Use your sentences 1–8. Who won more money?

10A I'M A TOURIST. HELP! Student B

- a A is an English-speaking tourist in your town. Listen and answer his / her questions about the town. Explain everything very clearly and give as much information as you can!
- b Then change roles. Imagine you are an English-speaking tourist in your town (or the nearest big town). A lives in the town. Ask A six questions about the town using superlative adjectives. Get as much information as you can.

What's the oldest building?

(I think it's the cathedral.

How old is it?)

(I'm not sure. About 500 years, maybe?

1 What's _______ building? (old)

2 What's ______ place to go for a day trip? (nice)

3 What's ______ place to go to with children? (good)

4 What's ______ souvenir? (typical)

5 What's _____ souvenir? (popular)

6 Where do you have ______ view? (beautiful)

10B WHAT ARE YOU GOING TO DO?

Student B

- a Answer A's questions.
- **b** Ask **A** the questions below. Use going to.

Tonight

What / do after dinner? What time / go to bed?

Tomorrow

/ go to work (or school) tomorrow? What / do in the evening?

Next weekend

/ go out on Friday night? What / do? What / do on Sunday?

(What are you going to do after dinner?

Writing

1 COMPLETING A FORM

Capital letters

In English these words start with a CAPITAL letter.

- names and surnames Melissa Rogers
- continents, countries, nationalities, and languages Europe, France, French
- towns and cities New York
- days of the week *Monday*
- the first word in a sentence Her father is from Milan.
- the pronoun I She's Russian and I'm Mexican.
- a Read the information box.
- b Complete the online form with your information.

VISIT AND SHORT STAY (VISAF2) Visa application form for a visitor or student				
About you				
First name	Surname (Family name)			
Mr / Mrs / Ms	Date of birth			
	DDMMYYYY			
Gender male fen	nale			
Marital status				
married single divo	orced separated			
Nationality				
Place of birth: country	town / city			
Contact details Home address	ss and postcode			
Email address				
Phone number:				
home (landline)	mobile			
Passport / Identity card num	Del			

 Write this paragraph again with CAPITAL letters where necessary.

my name's marek. i'm from gdansk in poland, and i speak polish, german, and a little english. my teacher is american. her name's kate. my english classes are on tuesdays and thursdays.

d Write a similar paragraph about you. Check the capital letters are correct.

2 A PERSONAL PROFILE

a Read Fiona's profile. Do you have similar interests?

netlinks

Fiona Hill



MY PROFILE

Hometown

I'm from Manchester, but I live in London.

Occupation

I'm a web designer. I work for an international company.

Languages

I speak English and a little Italian.

INTERESTS

Music I like pop and classical music. I don't like opera or jazz.

Films I like action films. I love the old James Bond films, e.g. From Russia with Love.

TV I don't watch a lot of TV, but I like American series.

Sport I don't watch football or

other sports. I go to the gym after work.

and, but, or

and I speak English and a little Italian.
I like pop and classical music.

but I'm from Manchester, but I live in London.
I don't watch TV very much, but I like
American series.

or I don't like opera or jazz.
I don't watch football or other sports.

e.g. = for example. We often use it when we write informally.
I like rock music, e.g. Coldplay.

- b Read the information box. Then write a profile of yourself. Use the same headings (Hometown, Music, etc.). Attach a photo if you can. Use and, but, and or to join your ideas together.
- c Check your profile. Make sure you use and, but, and or correctly.

c p.27

3 AN ARTICLE

- a Read Cristina's article. Find her answers to questions 1–4.
 - 1 What's your favourite day of the week? Why?
 - 2 What do you usually do in the morning?
 - 3 Where do you have lunch? Who with? What do you usually do after lunch?
 - 4 What do you usually do in the evening?

after and then

Use after + another word, e.g. after lunch, after work, after that, etc.

Use then to say what happens next, e.g. I get up and **then** I have breakfast.

b Look at the highlighted words to check you understand them, and read the information box. Then use them to complete the sentences below.

1	Jack usually gets up at 7.30	he has
	a shower.	
2	lunch I often sleep for h	nalf an hour.

3 She always has a bath _____ she goes to bed.

4 ______ the week I work ______ 9.00 _____ 5.00.

5 I get home at about 7.30, take the dog for a walk, and after _____ I have dinner.

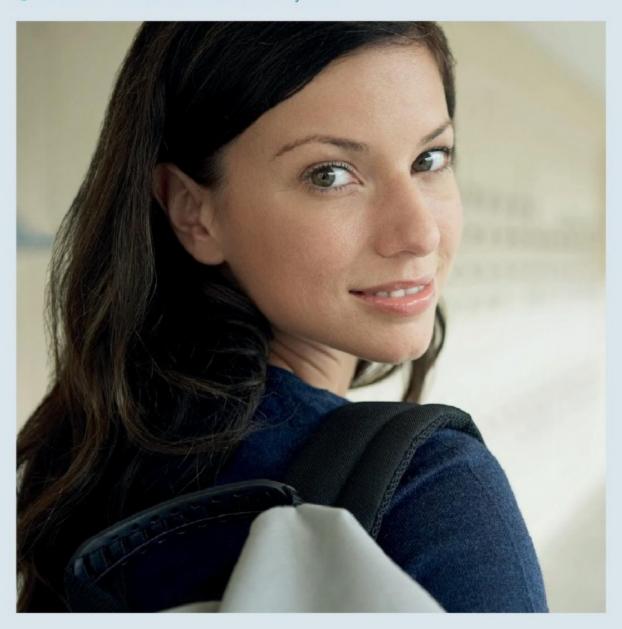
6 We usually watch TV _____ it's time to go to bed.

- c Plan an article called My favourite day. Plan four paragraphs. Make notes to answer questions 1–4 in a. What other information could you include to make the article interesting?
- d Now write your article. Choose the ideas you want to use. Don't forget to use some of the highlighted words to link together your ideas.
- Check your article. Make sure you use the highlighted words correctly.
- f Show your article to another student. Can you find one thing in your partner's article that is the same for you?



My favourite day

O March 24 #favourite#weekend#family#food



My favourite day of the week is Saturday, because it's the first day of the weekend!

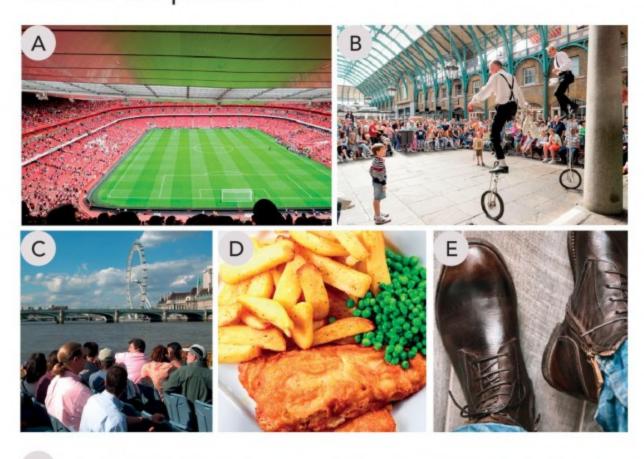
I get up very early during the week, so on Saturday it's nice to get up late, and I always stay in bed until about 10.30. Then I usually go shopping with a friend. In Spain a lot of shops are closed on Sundays, so Saturday is the only day for shopping. We don't always buy something, but we have fun just looking.

I often have lunch at my mother's house, with her and my brother. It's great, because my mum is a really good cook — she always makes things we like, and my brother and I have time to talk about our week. After lunch I sometimes study from about 4.00 to 6.00, especially if I have exams.

In the evening I usually go out with my friends. We often go to the cinema, and after that we have a pizza or *tapas*. I never go to bed before 1.00, or sometimes later.

4 POSTING ON SOCIAL MEDIA

a Marco is on holiday in London. He posts news and photos from his holiday. Read his posts and match them to the photos.



Thur 8 Jun

Do you like my new boots? They're from Camden Market, and I'm wearing them for the first time. I love English fashion!

Thur 8 Jun

I'm sitting at a café in Covent Garden and watching the amazing street artists. It's quite cold for September, but it isn't raining! Covent Garden is full of tourists (like me!).

Fri 9 Jun

Beautiful weather today – the sun's shining! I'm on a boat on the Thames – great views of London buildings.

10.30 am

Fri 9 Jun

I'm having a typical English lunch at a pub – fish and chips. It's OK, but I prefer Italian food, of course! 1.20 pm

Fri 9 Jun

I'm at the Emirates Stadium with tickets for the Arsenal– Man City match! I usually support Roma, but I'm supporting Arsenal today. 7.15 pm

 Imagine you are on holiday in your country or abroad. Plan four posts or messages of about 30 words. Think about the following:

Where are you? What are you doing? Who are you with? What's the weather like?

- c Write your posts. Make sure they are about 30 words.
- d Check your posts. Make sure you use present simple and present continuous correctly.

5 AN INFORMAL EMAIL

Hi from Madrid

a Read the email. Who do you think Stefan is?

From: Carmen <carmensanchez@hotmail.com>
To: Stefan <stefan7541200@moebius.ch>

Hi Stefan

Subject:

My name's Carmen. I'm 19, and I'm from Cáceres, in Spain. I'm a receptionist at a hotel. I'm studing English becuse I need it for my job.

I live with my parents and my brother and sister. My father is an arkitect and my mother works in a clothes shop. My brother and sister are at school.

I don't have very much free time because I work six days a week. I usualy go shoping on my day off. In the evening I like seeing freinds or listening to music. I really like hip hop. What kind of music do you like?

Please write soon.

Best wishes Carmen

- b Cover the email. What personal information can you remember about Carmen? What does she say about her family and her free time? Look at the email again and check.
- c Look at the six underlined spelling mistakes. Can you spell the words correctly?
- d Plan a similar email. Make notes about the following information.

Paragraph 1: Your name, age, and where you are from. Say what you do, and why you are studying English.

Paragraph 2: Who you live with. Say something about them.

Paragraph 3: What you like doing in your free time.

Informal emails

Beginning: Hi + name

Middle: Use contractions, e.g. *I'm* from Cáceres. **End:** Best wishes or Love (for a good friend)

- Write your email. Use your notes and the language in the information box.
- f Check your email for spelling mistakes.
 - To practise your English you can write to a friend in another country. You can find 'penfriend' websites on the internet.





6 DESCRIBING YOUR HOME

- a Read the website and the description of a flat to rent. Imagine you want to go to Budapest for a week's holiday. Would you like to stay there?
- b Number the information in the order it comes in the description.
 - Details about some of the rooms
 - How far it is from the city centre
 - What floor the flat is on
 - What rooms there are
 - What places or services there are nearby
 - What you can see from the flat
 - Where it is
- c What adjectives does the writer use to describe...?
 - 1 the street 2 the kitchen 3 the view 4 the park

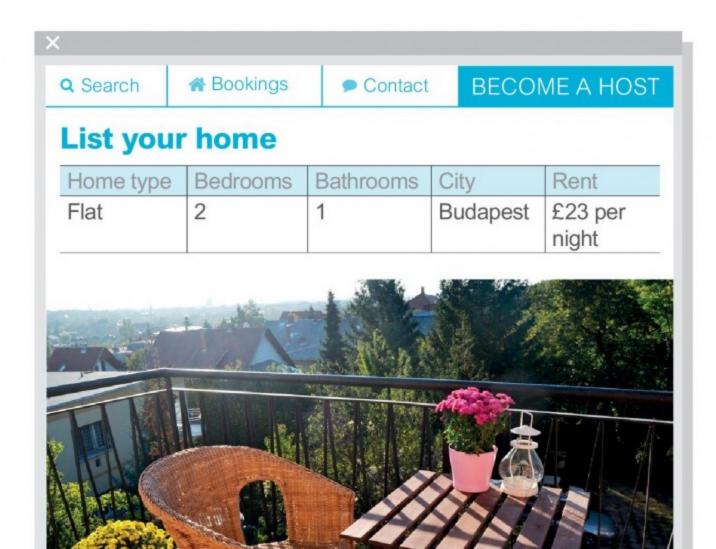


The kitchen is small, but there's a table and chairs, so you can eat there.

We can use so to express a result or consequence, e.g.

I was very tired, **so** I went to bed early. My office is near my house, **so** I walk to work.

- d Read the information box. Then plan a description of your house or flat for the website. Make notes on the topics in b.
- e Write your description.
- f Check your description. Make sure you use there is / there are correctly. Show it to another student. Can you find one thing in your partner's description that is the same as yours?
- G p.65





Summary

My flat is in a quiet street in a residential area of Budapest. It's on the third floor. There are two bedrooms, a living room, a bathroom, and a light, pretty kitchen. One bedroom is big, and one is a study with a sofa bed. The kitchen is small, but there's a table and chairs, so you can eat there. There's a great view from the balcony – you can see the city lights in the evening and the sunrise in the morning. There isn't a garden, but the flat is very near a beautiful park, and Gellert Hill is also quite near. The flat is a 15-minute walk from Buda Castle and only five stops by bus from the historic city centre.



7 A FORMAL EMAIL

a Read the advertisement and Pascale's email, and complete it with the words in the list.

about are confirm Dear double from hope Regards would

b You made a booking last night at The White Cottage Bed and Breakfast. Plan a similar email. Think about these things.

Are you travelling with someone or alone?
What kind of room(s) did you book?
How many nights did you book for? Which dates?
How are you planning to get there?
When are you planning to arrive?
Do you want to have dinner there? When?

Formal emails (e.g. to a hotel, a language school, etc.)

Beginning:

Dear Mr / Mrs / Ms ______ (+ surname),

Dear Sir or Madam (if you don't know the person's name),

Use a comma (,) not a colon (:), e.g.

Dear Mr Brown, NOT Dear Mr Brown:

Middle:

Don't use contractions, e.g.

I would like to make a reservation NOT I'd like to...

End:

Regards
(your first name + surname)

c Read the information box. Then write your email. Check that there aren't any contractions.





1 Mr and Mrs Buckingham,
I booked a ² room and a single room on your website this morning for three nights, ³ 24th to 27th June.
We ⁴ planning to arrive by car at ⁵ 5.00 in the afternoon on the 24th. Is there a place where we can park near your house?
My husband and I and our son 6 also like to have dinner in The White Cottage on the evening of the 24th. My son is vegetarian – I 7 that is not a problem. Could you please 8 that this will be possible?
9
Pascale Mercier

Listening

1.15

- 1 A A cheese and tomato sandwich, please.B That's £5.20.
- 2 A So, Anna, your classes are on Tuesday and Thursday mornings.
 - **B** Que? Sorry?
- 3 The British Airways flight to Rome is now boarding at Gate number 9.
- 4 A Where to, madam?
 - B Manchester Road, please. Number 16.
- 5 A Here's your key, sir. Room 12.
 - **B** Thank you.
- 6 A Here we are.
 - B Oh no. It's closed.
 - A Look, it says 'Closed on Monday'!

1.23

- 1 A Hi. Where are you from?
 - B We're from Oviedo, in Spain.
 - A OK. Good luck to the Spanish team!
- B Thank you!
- 2 A Hello. I'm Mike from UK News. Where are you from?
 - B I'm from Australia.
 - A Are you from Sydney?
 - B No, I'm not. I'm from Cairns.
 - A Where's Cairns? Is it near Sydney?
- B No, it isn't. It's in the north. Am I on TV?
- A Yes, you are.
- B Wow!
- 3 A Hi. Are you German?
- **B** No, we aren't. We're from Switzerland.
- A Oh, sorry!

1.30

- 1 Announcer The train waiting on platform 13 is the 9.48 Great Western train to Oxford, calling at Slough, Reading, Didcot Parkway, and Oxford.
- A That's our train. Platform 13. Come on.
- **B** OK. Let's go.
- 2 A Excuse me! How far is it to Dublin?
 - **B** It's about 40 kilometres.
 - A Thanks a lot.
- **3** A Just one more set. Come on!
 - **B** 15–love.
 - A Fantastic serve!
- 4 A Will all passengers on flight BA234 to Budapest please go to Gate 60 immediately.
 - **B** Gate 60. Is that our flight?
- C No, it's to Budapest, not Bucharest.
- 5 A How much is that?
 - **B** Two pizzas and a Coke. That's £17.
- 6 A What's your address?
 - **B** It's 80 Park Road.
 - A Sorry? What number?
 - B 80, eight-oh. Park Road.
- **7 A** OK, can you be quiet, please? Open your books on page 90.
 - B What page is it?
 - C Page 90.

1.41

Mark Hello? Hello? Can you hear me?
Micaela Hi, yes, fine. I can hear you.
Mark Good! I'm Mark, from English House
Language School.

Micaela Hi, Mark.

Mark OK, can I check your details first?

Micaela Yes, of course.

Mark What's your first name?

Micaela Micaela.

Mark How do you spell it?

Micaela M-I-C-A-E-L-A.

Mark M-I-C-A-E-L-A – is that right?

Micaela Yes, that's right.

Mark And what's your surname?

Micaela Vazquez.

Mark Vazquez. Is that V-A-S...? Micaela No, it's V-A-Z-Q-U-E-Z.

Mark V-A-7-O-U-F-7 OK And how

Mark V-A-Z-Q-U-E-Z. OK. And how old are you?

Micaela I'm 20.

Mark Where are you from?

Micaela I'm from Argentina.

Mark Where in Argentina?

Micaela From Buenos Aires.

Mark What's your address?

Micaela It's Florida one six five.

Mark Florida's the street? Number one six five? Micaela Yes.

Mark What's your postcode?

Micaela Sorry?

Mark You know, the postcode.

Micaela Ah yes. It's C- one zero zero five A-A-C.

Mark C- one zero zero five A-A-C. Great. What's your email address?

Micaela It's m dot vazquez at mail dot com.

Mark And what's your phone number?

Micaela My mobile or my home phone, my landline?

Mark Both - mobile and landline.

Micaela My mobile is one one, one five, eight nine three four, five five six eight.

Mark One one, one five, eight nine three four, five five six eight. Great. And your landline?

Micaela Five four, one one, six zero two three, five four four two.

Mark Five four, one one, six zero two three, five four four two.

Micaela That's right.

Mark OK, that's great. So, what do you do, Micaela?

Micaela I'm at university. I'm a medical student...

1.45

Snoop Dogg isn't his real name. His real name is Calvin Cordozar Broadus. He's American. Shakira is her real name. Her full name is Shakira Isabel Mebarak Ripoll. She's from Colombia.

2.5

- 1 On my desk I have my computer. I have some pens and pieces of paper. I have a lamp, and a photo of my family. Oh, and a phone. It's very tidy.
- 2 In my study I have a desk, a table and two chairs. I have a lot of books and a big dictionary on the desk it isn't very tidy! And I have a map of Europe on the wall.
- 3 I have a lot of things in my bag. I have my phone. I have the charger for my phone. I have my sunglasses, tissues. And I have my house keys and my purse.

2.15

Lisa The Highland Hotel's 20 miles from here. Let's go there.

John 20 miles? No problem.

Lisa John! Slow down!

John Oh no!...Here she comes.

Policewoman Good evening, sir, madam. Turn off the engine, please, sir. Thank you.

John What's the problem, officer?

Policewoman The problem? Well, sir, 70 miles an hour is the problem. That's very, very fast. The limit on this road is 50 miles an hour. Can I see your driving licence?

John 70? Oh. Er, I'm very sorry, officer.

Policewoman Ah, what a beautiful baby! What's his name?

Lisa Alfie. He's very tired, officer. And it's 20 miles to our hotel.

Policewoman Well...OK...go to your hotel. But please slow down, sir.

John Yes - thank you, officer.

Policewoman Goodbye, sir, madam. Goodbye, Alfie!

3.14

Part 1

Announcer And now on Radio 4, His job, her job.

Presenter Good evening and welcome again to the jobs quiz *His job*, *her job*. And our team tonight are David, a teacher...

David Hello.

Presenter Kate, who's unemployed...

Kate Hi.

Presenter ...and Lorna, who's a writer.

Lorna Good evening.

Presenter And our first couple tonight are...
Alex Alex.

Presenter And?

Sue Sue.

Presenter Welcome to the programme, Alex and Sue. OK team, you have one minute to ask Alex questions about his job and then one minute to ask Sue about her job, starting now. Let's have your first question for Alex.

David Hi, Alex. Do you work in an office?

Alex No, I don't.

Lorna Do you work in the evening?

Alex It depends. Yes, sometimes.

Kate Do you make things?

Alex No, I don't.

Lorna Do you wear a uniform or special clothes?

Alex Er, yes – I wear special clothes.

Kate Do you drive in your job?

Alex No, I don't.

Lorna Do you work in a team?

Alex Yes, I do. With ten other people.

Kate Do you have special qualifications? **Alex** Qualifications? No, I don't.

David Do you speak foreign languages?

Alex No, only English.

Presenter You only have time for one more question, team...

Alex Yes, I do. At weekends. Well, not every

weekend... **Presenter** Your time's up.

David Er, do you travel?

118



3.15

Part 2

Presenter Now team, you have a minute to ask Sue about her job.

Kate Hello Sue. Do you work outside? **Sue** It depends. Outside and inside. **Lorna** Do you work at the weekend?

Sue Yes, I do.

David Do you work with the public?

Sue No, I don't.

Kate Do you have good holidays?

Sue No, I don't. I never have any holidays.

Kate Do you work at night? **Sue** Sometimes. It depends.

Lorna Do you earn a lot of money?

Sue No, nothing! I don't have a salary.

David Do you like your job?

Sue Yes, I do! I love it.

Presenter That's time. OK, team...

3.17

Becca He's beautiful. Is he a fox terrier? Sorry, he or she?

Dave She. Yes, she's a fox terrier. Her name's Dolly. And your dog?

Becca He's a Labrador.

Dave What's his name?

Becca Barry. Barry come here!

Dave Dolly. Here. Stop it.

Becca I think Barry likes her.

Dave Yes! Sorry, I'm Dave. What's your name?

Becca Becca. Hi.

Dave Nice to meet you, Becca! How old is

Becca Er...He's, er, two. And Dolly?

Dave Er...The same. Hey, Dolly! Come back!

3.20

Becca Hi. It's me. Becca.

Dave Hi. It's the first floor.

Becca Hi, Dave. Very nice flat.

Dave Do you like it? It has a big kitchen.

Becca Mmm. Nice smell. Er, where's Dolly?

Dave She isn't here. Er, Becca, I need to tell you something. Dolly isn't my dog. She's my friend's dog. I sometimes help and take her for a walk.

Becca You don't have a dog?

Dave No. Er...I don't like dogs very much. And my flat's quite small. I'm so sorry. I know you love dogs.

Becca Don't worry! Barry isn't my dog either! He's my sister's dog. I like dogs, but...in fact...I have two cats. How do you feel about cats?

Dave I love cats – in fact I prefer cats to dogs! Come and sit down. It's nearly ready.

Becca What's for lunch?

Dave Spaghetti carbonara – and then chocolate ice cream. Home-made!

Becca All for me this time!

4.6

Anna Who's that?

Grace That's my boyfriend, Mark.

Anna He's good-looking. How old is he?

Grace 26.

Anna What does he do?

Grace He's a medical student. He finishes this year – I hope!

Anna Where does he study?

Grace At University College London.

Anna Does he like it?

Grace Yes, he loves it. And this is my sister Celia and her kids.

Anna Ah. She looks like you.

Grace Yes, she does.

Anna How old is she?

Grace She's 35.

Anna How old are the children?

Grace Carlos, the little one, is two, and Daniel, the older one's, er, six, I think. They live in Chile, so I don't see them very often.

Anna Is that another sister?

Grace No, she's my sister-in-law, Miriam. She's married to my brother Tim.

Anna What does Tim do?

Grace He's a lawyer, and Miriam's a teacher.

Anna How old are their children?

Grace Alex is four, and Helen's 13 months now.

Anna They look lovely!...So how about you and Mark? When's the wedding?

Grace Wedding! No, thanks! I'm too young!

4.11

Interviewer What time do you get up in the morning?

Darius I get up at about half past seven.

Interviewer How do you feel when you get up?
Darius I know half past seven isn't that early, but it's early for me and I usually feel tired and in a bit of a bad mood.

Interviewer Do you have breakfast?

Darius Absolutely. I have cereal and milk, and some bread with honey or jam. I love honey!

Interviewer Do you walk to school?

Darius No, it's quite far away. I go to school by Tube. I usually get to school about twenty past eight. I like to be early.

Interviewer What time does your first lesson start?

Darius It starts at nine. I have four or sometimes five lessons before lunch.

Interviewer Where do you have lunch?

Darius I usually have lunch at school at about one o'clock. I know people usually say that school food is terrible, but actually at my school the food is really good.

Interviewer And after lunch?

Darius We start lessons again at 1.45. I usually have two or three lessons in the afternoon.

Interviewer What time does school finish?

Darius At 4.15. But I don't go home then. I stay at school to do extra things – I study in the library or play music.

Interviewer What kind of music?

Darius Well, I sing in the school choir on Tuesdays, and on Thursdays, I play percussion in the orchestra. I love music – it's my main hobby.

Interviewer So what time do you usually get home?

Darius At about six o'clock.

Interviewer What's the first thing you do? **Darius** I have a shower, and then I have dinner.

And then, of course, homework.

Interviewer How much homework do you have?

Darius Two or three hours. It's my last year at school and I have my A levels this summer. I need to get really good marks to get into university.

Interviewer Do you watch TV in the evening?
Darius No, never. I don't have time. When I finish my homework I practise the piano and then I go to bed.

Interviewer What time do you go to bed?
Darius At about half past ten. I'm usually so tired I go to sleep straight away. All I really do these days is study, eat, and sleep.

Interviewer So no social media or anything like that?

Darius Well...I do spend a bit of time on Facebook. But not much, I promise!

3 5.2

Amy 12.30. In a long queue outside the Conference Centre in Manchester.

Guard Remember, you need ID. You can't come in if you don't have ID.

Amy Here's my passport.

Guard Thanks 'Amy Jones'. Yes, that's you! OK, come in. Next, please!

Amy 12.45. In the waiting area with 350 other singers!

Organizer 1 OK Amy, sit here and wait until we call your name.

Amy Thanks.

Organizer 1 Are you here for the audition, too? Friend No, I'm not. I'm Amy's friend. Can I wait with her?

Organizer 1 Yeah, sure.

Friend Thanks.

Amy Let's sit here. I'm so nervous...

Organizer 1 Mike Smith, Pat Jones, Tony Cash, come with me. This way.

Amy Good luck!

Amy 4.00. Three hours later! My turn at last!

Organizer 2 Amy Jones, Naomi Williams, Justin Elliot? Can you come with me, please? It's your turn now.

Amy Oh help! It's my turn.

Friend Good luck, Amy! You can do it!

Amy Excuse me. Can my friend come with me?Organizer 2 No, she can't. She can wait there.And you can't take your bag into the audition.

Leave it with your friend. **Amy** OK.

Amy 4.15. In the audition, with three judges. Really nervous!

Judge Amy...Jones? What's your song?

Amy One Day.

Judge We can't hear you. Is the microphone on?

Amy Sorry...Sorry. Can you hear me now? **Judge** Yes, that's fine.

Amy My song's One Day.

Judge Can you start, please?

Amy Oh no! I can't remember the first line.

Judge Take your time.

Amy I'm OK now!

5.11

Woman Oh, hello Paul. Jack, it's Paul, from next door. Come in! We're having a party. It's my birthday.

Paul Oh! Er, Happy Birthday!

Woman Thanks. Would you like a drink?

Paul Actually, I want to talk to you about the noise.

Woman Sorry?

Paul The NOISE. It's very noisy.

Woman Yes. We're having a great time! Do you want a beer? Or a glass of wine?

Paul Oh, well, yes, OK. A beer, please.

Woman Here you are. Come and meet our friends. Hey, everyone, say hello to Paul. He's our neighbour.

All Hello, Paul.

Paul Hello.

Woman Do you want to dance, Paul?

3 5.15

A Good afternoon. How can I help you?

B Hello. I have a reservation for two nights.

A Your name?

B Carter.

A Carter. Here we are. Can you sign here, please?...Here's your key card. You're in room 212, on the second floor.

3 5.16

- 1 A Can I help you?
 - B Yes, I'd like a latte, please.
 - A Regular or large?
 - B Large, please.
 - A To have here or take away?
 - B To have here.
 - A That's £3.40, please.
 - B Here you are. £3.40.
- 2 A Where are my car keys? I can't find them anywhere.
 - B I don't know. In your jacket pocket?
 - A No, they aren't there.
 - B How about on the hall table?
 - A No.
 - **B** Are you sure you don't have them?
 - A Absolutely sure.
 - B Look in the living room.
- 3 A Oh no, it's 20 minutes late.
 - **B** Is there a waiting room somewhere? It's really cold here on the platform.
 - A No, I don't think so.
 - B What's the time now?
 - A 6.15. We can take the 6.20, but it's a slow train.
 - B No, let's wait then.
- 4 OK, come on everyone, out here. Right, stand together under the tree. OK! Are you ready? Carole, I can't see you. Can you stand next to Jim? OK, ready? Say cheese!
- **5** A ...So, Mr Bartlett, do you have any questions you'd like to ask?
 - **B** Er, yes. On the website it says the hours are from 10 to 6. What about the weekends?
 - A The hours are 10 to 6 at the weekends too, but you get paid overtime on Sundays. Saturday counts as a normal day. But if you work on a Saturday, you have a weekday free. The contract says clearly five days a week, with possibilities of overtime.
 - B Oh right.

3 5.19

The best thing about the weather in London is that it's never extreme. It isn't usually very hot or very cold. In the summer, it's sometimes sunny and sometimes cloudy, with temperatures of about 22 degrees. And of course, it sometimes rains. In winter the temperature is usually between zero and 10 degrees. It can be windy and cold, but it hardly ever snows.

In spring and in autumn the weather is very changeable – you can have all the four seasons in one day! It can be sunny in the morning, cloudy at lunchtime, raining in the afternoon, and then cold and windy in the evening. I always tell tourists to take their sunglasses and their umbrellas when they go out! But one thing you don't often see these days in London is fog. A lot of tourists come to London and say, 'Where's the fog? London is always foggy in films!' Well, it's true that, in the past, that is, until the 1950s, London was a very foggy city because the air was really dirty. But today the air is clean and it's hardly ever foggy.

1 6.5

Part 3 Walid walks for five days through the mountains. The sun shines, and at night it's very cold. Then, one evening, he finds the palace. The prince welcomes him and gives him food and drink, and a comfortable bed. But Walid can't sleep. He's thinking about the 1,000 gold coins.

The next morning he says to the prince, 'I want to say thank you to you. Please have this silver ring. It's my mother's.'

The prince is very happy. 'This is a beautiful ring,' he says. 'Thank you. Let me give you something in return.'

He gives Walid a box. 'Don't open this until you

get home,' he says. 'Be careful with it. It's very, very valuable.'

Walid runs through the mountains, and after three days he arrives home.

'Where's my silver ring?' shouts his mother.
'Don't worry about your ring!' says Walid. 'Look at this!'

Hassan and their mother watch as he opens the box. Inside he finds...

3 6.14

- 1 A Hi, Kim. Listen, do you want come to the theatre in London this Saturday?
 - **B** Saturday? I can't it's my brother's 21st birthday! We're having a big party at my parents' house.
 - A Oh, that sounds great! Have a wonderful time – and say 'Happy Birthday' from me!
- 2 A Are you in the office next week?
 - B No, I'm on holiday.
 - A Where are you going?
 - B Australia!
 - A Lucky you! When do you get back?
- B On the 30th.
- A Wow! That's a long holiday.
- B Yeah, three weeks! I can't wait.
- 3 A You drink a lot of coffee!
 - **B** Yes, this is my fifth this morning.
 - A It's not good for you, you know.
 - B I know, but I can't wake up without it.
- 4 A Where's the restaurant?
 - **B** It's not far. It's on the corner of Park Avenue and 53rd.
 - A Great. See you there at 7.30.
- **5** A Good morning. I'm here to see Lynn Mody. My name's Graham Davies.
 - B Just a moment, sir, I'll give her a ring...Is that Lynn? There's a Mr Davies here to see you...That's fine, sir. Could you sign in here? Great. You can go straight up. She's on the sixth floor. The lifts are just over there.
 - A Many thanks.

7.1

This painting is a self-portrait by the Dutch painter Vincent van Gogh.

Van Gogh was born in the Netherlands on 30th March 1853. His parents weren't poor – his father was a church minister, and his mother was an artist. Van Gogh's first job was in his uncle's company, selling paintings, but later he was a teacher in England, and finally a painter. We only really know what he looked like because of his many self-portraits. Only three photographs of him exist, and they are all from when he was young. This portrait is from his time in Arles in the South of France, in 1888, when he was 35. He was very poor, but he was happy because of the beautiful light and colours there. This portrait was a present for his friend, the painter Paul Gauguin. Gauguin and van Gogh were together in Arles for a month. Van Gogh was not strong mentally, and the relationship between them was difficult. After a big fight, van Gogh cut off his ear, and was in a mental hospital for some time. He died on 29th July 1890. He was only 37 years old. His paintings weren't popular during his lifetime and he was never rich or famous. But today people think that Vincent van Gogh is one of the greatest painters in the world, and his paintings, like Sunflowers, and The Starry Night, sell for millions of pounds.

7.6

Kevin and his partner Jeanette live in Birmingham, England. Last year they decided to go on a winter holiday to Trinidad in the Caribbean, and they looked for flights online. They were very happy to find cheap flights – only £800 return for the two of them. Kevin booked the flights and they started to plan their holiday.

On the day of their flight, they arrived at Birmingham Airport and parked their car in the long-stay car park. Then they walked into the terminal building and tried to check in their bags. The check-in assistant looked at their boarding passes and asked where they wanted to go. 'Trinidad,' they replied. 'We're going there on holiday.' The check-in assistant looked surprised.

7.7

Assistant Where do you want to go?

Jeanette Trinidad. We're going there on holiday.

Assistant I'm sorry, but there are no flights from here to Trinidad.

Kevin No flights? But we booked last month! **Assistant** Let me check your booking. Oh, I see. I'm really sorry, but your booking isn't from this Birmingham. It's from Birmingham Alabama, in the United States.

Jeanette No, it can't be.

Assistant I'm very sorry, but it is. Look, it says BHM – that's the code for Birmingham airport in the States. You can't fly from here.

Jeanette I don't believe it. Kevin, did you check the airport when you booked?

Kevin Yeah. It was Birmingham. I didn't check which Birmingham.

Jeanette You idiot!

Assistant I'm very sorry, but you can't fly today.

7.17

Friend What was your best ever New Year's Eve? One you always remember?

Denisa Oh, definitely 2014, when I was in Rio.

Friend Who were you with?

Denisa I was with my boyfriend Marcelo, who's Brazilian.

Friend Why was it so special?

Denisa Well, Brazil has special traditions for New Year's Eve, and they were all new for me. For example, it's a Brazilian tradition to wear white clothes for New Year's Eve because white is a symbol of peace, so I wore a beautiful white dress, which Marcelo's mother bought me. I have a photo somewhere on my phone. Yes, here, look!

Friend How lovely. So what did you do?
Denisa Er, let me think. Well, first we had a typical New Year's Eve dinner with Marcelo's family. And then, I suppose it was about ten, we got a bus to Copacabana.

Friend What was the atmosphere like there? **Denisa** Oh, it was amazing! The streets were already full of people. We went to a show at a place near the beach. It was great, and we danced samba.

Friend Wow. Were you there at midnight? **Denisa** No, no. When we saw it was nearly midnight, we went to the beach, and the typical countdown started, you know – ten, nine, eight...Happy New Year! Everywhere we heard the sound of people opening champagne, and we watched the wonderful fireworks.

Friend It sounds great. What did people do when the fireworks finished?

Denisa Most people went to other parties, or they went home.

Friend And what about you?

Denisa We decided to go to a different beach, a beach called Praia do Arpoador, and we had our first swim of the new year. It was magical.

3 8.4

Then the inspector questioned Barbara Travers.

Inspector What did you do after dinner yesterday evening?

Barbara After dinner? I played cards with Gordon, and then I went to bed.

Inspector What time was that?

Barbara It was about half past eleven. I remember, I looked at my watch.

Inspector Did you hear anything in your father's room?

Barbara No. I didn't hear anything.

Inspector Miss Travers, did you have any problems with your father?

Barbara No, I didn't have any problems with him at all. Daddy was a wonderful man and... a wonderful father. I'm sorry, Inspector.

Inspector Don't worry, Miss Travers. No more questions.

3 8.5

Next the inspector questioned Gordon Summers.

Inspector What did you do after dinner, Gordon?

Gordon I played cards with Barbara. Then she went to bed.

Inspector Did you go to bed then?

Gordon No. I stayed in the living room and I had a glass of whisky. Then I went to bed.

Inspector What time was that?

Gordon I don't remember exactly. I didn't look at the time.

Inspector Did you hear anything during the night?

Gordon No, I didn't. I was very tired. I slept very

Inspector You and Mr Travers were business partners, weren't you?

Gordon Yes, that's right.

Inspector And it's a very good business, I understand.

Gordon Yes, Inspector, it is.

Inspector And now it's your business.

Gordon Listen, Inspector, I did not kill Jeremy. He was my partner and he was my friend.

3.8

Finally, the inspector questioned Claudia Pasquale.

Inspector What did you do yesterday evening, after dinner?

Claudia I went to my room and I had a bath and I went to bed.

Inspector What time was that?

Claudia About 11 o'clock.

Inspector Did you hear anything?

Claudia Yes. I heard somebody go into Jeremy's room. It was about 12 o'clock.

Inspector Who was it?

Claudia It was Amanda, his wife.

Inspector Are you sure? Did you see her?

Claudia Well no, I didn't see her. But I'm sure it was Amanda.

Inspector You were Mr Travers's secretary, Claudia.

Claudia Yes, I was.

Inspector Were you just his secretary?

Claudia What do you mean?

Inspector Were you in love with Mr Travers?

Claudia No, I wasn't.

Inspector The truth please, Claudia.

Claudia Very well, Inspector. Yes, I was in love with him and he said he was in love with me. He said he wanted to leave his wife – Amanda - and marry me. I was stupid. I believed him. But he didn't leave her. He used me, Inspector! I was very angry with him.

Inspector Did you kill him?

Claudia No, Inspector. I loved Jeremy.

3 8.12

Barbara Let's go upstairs. Follow me...Be careful. The ceiling is very low here.

Leo It's a very old house.

Barbara Yes, the house is 300 years old. My family lived here for nearly 80 years. There are six bedrooms. This was my father's bedroom.

Kim Is there central heating in the house? Barbara Yes, there is. Why do you ask? Are you cold?

Kim Yes, it's very cold in here.

Leo That's because we're from California.

Barbara Let's go and see the other bedrooms. Leo Yes, of course.

Leo Well, what do you think, Kim? I love it! Don't you?

Kim I'm not sure. There's something about the house I don't like.

Leo Kim, it's perfect for the kids. Think of the garden. And it's a real, authentic English country house. What do you say?

Kim I suppose so. If you're sure.

Leo I am sure! Miss...er, Barbara. We want it. We want to rent the house.

Barbara Excellent.

Leo When can we move in?

Barbara As soon as you like.

3 8.14

Leo Hello.

Barman Good evening, sir, madam. What would you like to drink?

Leo Do you have champagne?

Barman Yes, sir.

Leo Two glasses of champagne, please.

Barman Here you are!

Leo Cheers, Kim.

Kim Cheers. To our new house.

Barman You're Americans, aren't you?

Leo Yes, that's right. We're from California.

Kim But this afternoon we rented the big house near here.

Barman Which house? The Travers family's house? Leo Yes.

Barman Oh.

Leo Is something wrong?

Barman Who showed you the house?

Kim Barbara. The old lady who lived there before.

Barman Ah, Barbara. Old Mr Travers's daughter. Some people thought that she was the one that did it.

Kim The one that did what? What happened? Barman Didn't she tell you?

Kim Tell us what?

Barman About the murder.

Leo & Kim Murder?

Barman Yes, Mr Travers was murdered in that house in 1965...in his bed.

Kim Oh, how horrible!

Barman The man who killed Mr Travers was Barbara's lover. The family never lived there again. They tried to sell the house, but nobody wanted to buy it. Not after a murder. That's why that house is always rented. Barbara never married, of course.

Leo Kim?

Kim Yes?

Leo Are you thinking what I'm thinking? Kim Yes – I don't want to live in a house where

somebody was murdered. Come on. Let's go.

Barman Hey, hey, your champagne! You didn't drink your champagne...Ah, well.

3 8.19

1 We stayed at The Langham for two nights. It's a wonderful place – a very elegant, very English hotel. The service, atmosphere, and room were excellent, and we really enjoyed our stay. But we had a very strange experience. On the first night we woke up at about 5.30. There was a strange noise outside our door. It was like somebody was scratching the door with their fingers. To tell you the truth, we were a little bit frightened. Then

we thought that probably it was other guests coming back late from a party, maybe they were drunk or something, and we went back to sleep. But the second night exactly the same thing happened. So we just thought, strange, maybe it's because it's an old hotel. But when we got home, we told the story to a friend, and he told us that that The Langham is haunted. We looked on the internet, and we read that people say that room 333 has a ghost! And our room was 332, the next room! We sent an email to The Langham and told them about it and they sent us some really interesting information about the ghost stories. We'd really like to stay in this fantastic hotel again, but maybe not in room 333!

2 I stayed at The Langham in November last year with my husband. It's a beautiful hotel, with a wonderful location. It's between Hyde Park and Regent's Park. We were in a room on the second floor. We knew that people said there were ghosts, and we knew about room 333, but we weren't worried at all. We had a nice meal in the hotel restaurant and then we went to bed. But in the middle of the night – about 3.00 in the morning – we suddenly woke up and we could hear loud noises from the room above us. They were really loud noises – like people were moving the bed or moving a heavy chair. Anyway, after two or three minutes, the noises stopped and we went back to sleep. There weren't any more strange noises, and we slept for the rest of the night. The next morning we went to Reception and said, 'We slept really badly last night – the people in the room above us made a terrible noise.' The man at Reception asked for our room number and said, 'Let me check'. He looked on the computer and he said, 'The room above you is empty, madam.' So I said, 'Are you sure?' And he said, 'Yes, madam. The room above yours is room 333. There wasn't anybody in that room last night.' We checked out of the hotel the same morning. Never again!

9.3

Woman We need food for the weekend - can you do the shopping on your way home this evening?

Man OK, I suppose so. What do we need? Woman Let's see. We need some coffee, we don't have anv.

Man OK...coffee...

Woman And some milk. And some juice.

Man Orange juice?

Woman Fine. And maybe apple juice, too.

Man OK. What else?

Woman Get a pineapple if they have them. Man One pineapple...

Woman And some oranges – four or five oranges - and some bananas. And I want to make a vegetable curry, so get some onions, some potatoes, some tomatoes...

Man Hold on, wait a minute...! Potatoes...

Woman Yes, two or three big ones. Oh, and forget the tomatoes - we've got some in the fridge. And a bottle of wine.

Man White? Red?

Woman Don't mind. Oh, and a lettuce, I want to make a salad.

Man A lettuce...Do we need any tomatoes? Woman No, I said no tomatoes! Man Sorry, yes, you did. Is that everything? Woman Yes, I think so. And don't forget

D 9.4

anything!

1 This is for my foodie friends. In case you thought lettuce was only for salads, here I'm cooking it in some butter with an onion. Then I add some mushrooms, chicken, fresh tomatoes, and some other things – not sure yet. Lettuce is also great in soups, or you can grill it and serve it with blue cheese.

2 We didn't feel like cooking last night, and anyway we didn't have any food in the house, so we decided to order some takeaway salads from our wonderful local pizzeria. They were all very good, but my favourite was a chicken salad with carrots, tomatoes, peppers, lettuce, and some pieces of fried bread.

3 Dinner last night at a restaurant in Piccadilly, called NOPI. We had lots of different sharing plates. I loved everything, especially this dish called shakshuka, which is North African, and it's basically eggs in a tomato sauce, but the mixture of herbs and spices makes it just fantastic. And the bread we had to dip in the sauce was wonderful, too. Go there. Soon.

4 OK guys, this is it! Our Thanksgiving dinner – which we had at 6.30 last night. All the usual things: turkey with cranberry sauce, roast vegetables, mashed potatoes, lots of vegetables, and more...and more...Mom said, 'why not go to a restaurant this year, maybe have seafood', but I said, 'no – I want it home-made and traditional' – so she did it. Thanks, Mom. I now need to spend a few hours on the sofa before I even think of going to bed. So how was yours?

9.7

1 A Hi. I'd like a bottle of oil.

B Olive oil?

A Yes, please.

2 A Can I help you?

B Yes, I'm looking for a packet of rice.

A Ordinary rice, basmati, brown rice?

B Er, basmati, please.

3 A Excuse me. I need a tin of tomatoes, but I can't see them anywhere.

B They're over there, next to the eggs.

A Thanks.

4 A Hi. I want a box of chocolates – a nice one. It's for my girlfriend's birthday.

B How much do you want to spend?

A Oh, not very much, I mean, nothing very expensive...

5 A A carton of juice, please.

B Apple juice? Orange juice?

A Er, orange juice.

B That's £1.50, please.

9.13

Presenter Question 1. What is the population of the UK? Is it approximately a, 47 million, b, 57 million, or c, 67 million?

Contestant I think it's c, 67 million.

Presenter C is the right answer! Question 2. How far is it from New York City in the east to Los Angeles in the west? Is it a, about 2,500 kilometres, b, about 4,000 kilometres, or c, about 5,000 kilometres?

Contestant About 4,000 kilometres.

Presenter Are you sure?

Contestant Yes. I'm sure.

Presenter B is the right answer! Question 3. How many politicians are there in the British Parliament? Is it a, 450, b, 650, or c, 750?

Contestant I think it's c, 750.

Presenter Final answer?

Contestant Final answer, 750.

Presenter I'm sorry, the right answer is b. There are 650 politicians in the British Parliament.

3 9.16

Presenter Good evening. Welcome to Quiz Night. Tonight's show comes from Manchester. And our first contestant is Eddie from Chorley. Hi, Eddie. Are you nervous?

Eddie No, not really. I think I'm, er, well-prepared.

Presenter Well, let's hope so. The rules are the same as always. I'm going to read you some sentences, and you have ten seconds to say if the sentence is true or false. If you get the first answer right, you win £100. Then for each correct answer you double your money, so if you get the second answer right, you win £200, and for the third correct answer, you win £400. For eight correct answers you win £12,800. But if you get an answer wrong, you lose all the money. Remember, you can also phone a friend, so if you're not sure about one of the answers, you can phone your friend to help you. Is that OK, Eddie?

Eddie Yeah, OK.

3 9.17

Presenter OK, Eddie, first question for £100. A whale can make a louder noise than a lion. True or false?

Eddie A whale can make a louder noise than a lion. Er, true.

Presenter Correct. Blue whales can make a sound of up to 188 decibels whereas a lion's roar is never more than 114 decibels. Ro-a-rrr. Now, for £200, the First World War was shorter than the Second World War. True or false?

Eddie Er, I think it's true.

Presenter Correct. It's true. The First World War lasted four years, from 1914 to 1918, but the Second World War lasted six years, from 1939 to 1945. Next, for £400, the American film industry is bigger than the Indian film industry.

Eddie I think it's false. You know, Bollywood and all that is huge. I think it's false.

Presenter Correct. The Indian film industry is much bigger than the American one. It produces about 1,000 films every year, which is double what Hollywood produces. In fact, America isn't even the second country that makes the most films, which is Nigeria. Next, for £800, in July, Edinburgh is hotter than Sydney. True or false?

Eddie In July, Edinburgh is hotter than Sydney. Er, true.

Presenter Correct. The average temperature in July in Edinburgh is 15 degrees, and in Sydney it's 13 degrees. Of course Australia's in the southern hemisphere, so it's winter there. Next, for £1,600, silver is heavier than gold. True or false?

Eddie Er, true. No, er, false.

Presenter Do you want to phone a friend?
Eddie No, I think it's false. I remember from science lessons at school. Gold is heavier than silver.

Presenter Correct. Gold weighs about 19 grams per cm³, and silver weighs only 10.5 grams. That means that gold is almost twice as heavy as silver. OK, for £3,200, the mountain K2 is more difficult to climb than Mount Everest.

Eddie Er, true.

Presenter Correct. 30% of the people who try to climb K2 die, usually on the way down, whereas only 5% of the people who try to climb Everest die. OK, Eddie, now for £6,400, driving in Italy is more dangerous than driving in Belgium. True or false?

Eddie Er, I think that's a trick question. We all think the Italians drive really fast, but maybe they're good drivers. I think it's false.

Presenter Well done, Eddie! It may be hard to believe, but in fact, out of every 100,000 people, six people died because of car accidents in Italy, compared to seven in Belgium. And finally, the last question. Be very careful, Eddie. If you get it right, you win £12,800, but if you get it wrong, you get nothing. Are you ready?

Eddie Yes, ready.

Presenter OK, for £12,800, it's better to do exercise in the morning than in the afternoon.

Eddie Er...er...

Presenter Quickly, Eddie, your time is nearly up. Eddie I think it's false, but I'm not sure. I want to phone a friend.

Presenter Right, Eddie. So, who do you want to call?

Eddie Sandra.

Presenter Is she your girlfriend?

Eddie Yes, she is.

Presenter OK then. Hello, is that Sandra?

Sandra Yes, it is.

Presenter I'm phoning from *Quiz Night*. Eddie needs some help. You have 30 seconds, Eddie. Here she is.

Eddie Hi. Sandra?

Sandra Yes.

Eddie Listen. It's the last question. 'It's better to do exercise in the morning than in the afternoon.' True or false? I think it's false.

Sandra Er, I think it's true. I always see people running in the park in the morning...

Eddie Google it. Quickly. On your phone.

Sandra What do I put in?

Eddie Just that sentence and see what comes up! 'It's better to do exercise in the morning than in the afternoon.' Come on!

Sandra Yes, I'm writing it. Oh sorry, I just got a message.

Eddie Hurry up, Sandra!

Presenter Time's up, I'm afraid. OK, Eddie. So, true or false?

Eddie Er. True.

Presenter Final answer?

Eddie Final answer. True.

Presenter I'm sorry, Eddie, it's false. It's better to do exercise in the afternoon, between 4.00 and 5.00. Eddie, you had £6,400 pounds, but now you go home with...nothing.

Eddie Why did I phone Sandra? Why didn't I phone my friend Dave?

10.10

Interviewer Gunnar, can you give us a quick summary of your journey?

Gunnar OK, so we left Istanbul 20 minutes late, at 1.30 in the morning – not a good start. But we arrived in Casablanca more or less on time. We visited the mosque at 4.30 in the morning. We couldn't go inside though - we just saw it from the outside! Then we went back to the airport and flew to Paris. When we arrived, we rushed outside and took some photos, and then went back in to a different terminal. It was really stressful, the most stressful part of the trip - but we just got to the gate in time for our flight to Punta Cana. When we got there, we went to a beach that was just 20 km from the airport, and we relaxed there for a bit, and then went back to the airport and got our flight to Caracas. And we arrived here at 10.00 at night, and we officially entered the country at 10.15. So – five continents in one day! We did it!

10.12

If you're thinking of having a holiday or travelling somewhere nice, the planning can be complicated. The internet is full of reviews of hotels, restaurants, and attractions. There are so many different ways of travelling, and thousands of places to go. Where do you start? Why not follow these three simple steps to find the right holiday for you.

Step 1. Think about what you want to do on your holiday. The first thing people usually try to decide is where they want to go, but it's probably better to start by thinking about what you want to do. Do you want to relax? Then think about how you relax. For example, do

you like reading, or doing yoga, or do you like doing something more active? Do you want to go somewhere completely different? Do you want to visit an exciting new city, or see some countryside and animals that are different from where you live? Seeing something completely new is a great way to forget about your normal life. Do you want to have an adventure? Perhaps you're dreaming about climbing Everest or living with an African tribe. You could use your holiday to make one of those dreams come true. Do you want to learn something new? Not everybody wants to sit in a classroom learning Spanish or be in a kitchen learning to cook when they're on holiday, but some people love it. And nowadays you can do courses in many countries and experience a different culture at the same time. So now Step 2. Think about the people you're going to go with. Are they family or friends? Do they have children? What do they want to do? People have different needs and interests, and if you're all going to enjoy the holiday, you need to make sure you all want the same things. But if what you really want to do is to meet new people, perhaps it would be better to travel alone.

And finally, Step 3. Think about good holidays you had in the past. Why were they good? Perhaps it was the people you were with. Perhaps it was something you learned, or an experience you had. What can you repeat from those holidays?

Of course, there are always other things you need to consider, like how much money you can spend, and how much time you can be away. But first follow these three steps, and then you're ready to start thinking about where you want to go!

10.15

Part 2

Jane Well, I have a problem with my boyfriend. We argue all the time. I'm not sure that he loves me. I want to know if we're going to stay together.

Jim Please choose five cards, but don't look at them...Ah, this is a good card. This means you're going to be very lucky.

Jane But am I going to stay with my boyfriend?

Jim Maybe...We need to look at the other cards first.

10.17

Part 4

Jim Now I can see everything clearly. You're going to leave your boyfriend and go away with the other man, with Jim...to another country. And very soon you're going to get married.

Jane Married? To Jim! But am I going to be happy with him?

Jim You're going to be very happy together. I'm sure of it.

Jane Oh no, look at the time. I'm going to be late for work.

11.4

The first thing that I really noticed when I arrived here was how incredibly friendly the people are. The 'ticos' - that's what they're called – are much friendlier than people in Europe. They always say buenos días to you even if they don't know you. And if something's good, like a beautiful day or a good meal, they say pura vida, which I love. It literally means 'pure life', but I think it really means 'things are great', or something like that. One thing that can be difficult though, their sense of time is completely different from ours – they call it 'tico time'. If they have an appointment at, let's say, seven in the evening, they probably leave home at seven o'clock, so they're always late. Luckily, my school works on what they call 'British time', so classes start punctually!

Another thing that surprised me was the weather. I thought Costa Rica was hot and sunny all the time. That's true in the dry season, and the temperature's about 25 degrees all year round, but in the rainy season, especially in September and October, it rains really heavily for maybe two hours a day. Really amazing rain, nothing like in England.

Everyone told me that the scenery was beautiful in Costa Rica, but it was even more beautiful than I expected. Incredible animals, birds, trees – and volcanoes. Some of them are active and smoke quietly, and then suddenly there's a big bang and they start erupting. I was quite frightened the first time it happened.

What else? Er, I thought that life here was going to be very cheap, but in fact, food is very expensive, especially imported food. The only thing that's cheap is fruit, vegetables, and coffee – wonderful, wonderful coffee. And the fruit and vegetables are very different from what we have in Europe. One day, I went to a market and I didn't recognize any of the fruit.

I like San José. I don't feel that it's dangerous, but it probably is. A colleague of mine was in a taxi the other day, and the taxi driver took out a gun and asked him for all his money! And the roads are terrible, especially in the rain! But in general, I love it here.

11.11

- A I What make of phone do you have?
 - A I have an iPhone.
 - I How old is it?
 - A Er, about two years old.
 - I How often do you change phones?
 - A Not very often, I would say. I like to, er, I'm not particularly worried about having the latest phone. I just want one that works well. Er, I usually keep my phone about four years if I don't lose it, that is.
 - I What do you use your phone for the most?
 - A Probably the internet. And messaging. Things like WhatsApp, Facebook Messenger.
 - I So you don't use it much to actually talk to people?
 - A No, I don't.
 - I What other apps do you use a lot?
 - A I use the weather one quite a lot. And I have a couple of games I like playing. And Skype. I use Skype from time to time to talk to my brother because he lives in Spain.
 - I Do you have any unusual apps that you sometimes use?
 - A I have one to track the food that I eat, but I don't use it every day. And I have a photo-editing app.
- **B** I What kind of phone do you have?
 - **B** An Android smartphone. A Samsung, er, Galaxy, I think.
 - I Is it new?
 - **B** About six months old.
 - I How often do you change phones?
 - **B** About every two to three years.
 - I What do you use it for the most?
 - **B** Receiving phone calls from other people, or looking up things on the internet.
 - I What apps do you have that you use a lot?
 - **B** An online banking app. I use that a lot. Email, of course. And the Kindle app, the e-reader.
 - I Do you like reading on your phone?
 - **B** No, I much prefer reading real books, paper books, but as I always have my phone with me there are lots of times like, on the bus or if I'm waiting for somebody, I can read a book on my phone.
 - I Do you have any unusual apps that you

- sometimes use?
- **B** Er, I have an app so I can order a taxi from my local taxi company.
- C I What kind of phone do you have?
 - C An iPhone.
 - I How often do you change your phone?
 - C When my contract lets me upgrade it, which is, I don't know, every two or three years.
 - I What do you use your phone for the most?
 - C Er, email, text messages, internet, and phone, I mean, talking. In that order.
 - I What apps do you use a lot?
 - C Apart from mail and Google, you mean?
 - I Yes
 - **C** Er, Twitter, er, BBC news, and various transport apps for booking trains or seeing what time they are.
 - I Do you have any unusual apps that you sometimes use?
 - C I have a 'night sky' app. If it's a starry night, I sometimes use that. You point your phone at the sky and it tells you the names of the stars and planets and things.

12.6

- A Yes, I have. I drive a lot in my job, several hours a day, and I like listening to books – it's much better than listening to the radio. I probably listen to a couple of books every week.
- **B** Yes, I've seen *Blade Runner* at least ten times. It's a really great film, I never get tired of it, I always notice something new.
- C No, never. I've definitely fallen asleep watching TV, but never in the cinema.
- **D** Yes, I have. I got a box set of *Downton Abbey* for Christmas last year, and the next day I watched four episodes one after another.
- E No, I haven't. It usually takes me a long time to finish a book, so I never read them again.
- F Yes, I bought the soundtrack of Catching Fire, you know, The Hunger Games, after I saw the film. It's got some amazing music: Coldplay, Imagine Dragons, Christina Aguilera.

12.7

Alison Let's go out for dinner next Saturday. We can celebrate that it's nearly the end of term.

Brett Good idea. Where?

Alison Let's try somewhere new, somewhere that we haven't been to before.

Brett Yeah, good idea.

Clare How about that Indian restaurant near the station, Curry Up?

Joe Curry Up? I've been there. It wasn't very good.

Clare OK. Joe says it's not great. What about
Chinese then? Somebody told me The Great
Wall is very good.

Alison Yes, I haven't been there, but people say it's great.

Joe The Great Wall? I've been there. I went there last week. It is good, but I don't really want to go again.

Brett Well, there's a new Thai place, Thai-Chi. It opened really recently.

Joe Thai Chi? I've been there, too. I went on Wednesday.

Alison Well, I don't know. Have you been to Mexican Wave?

Joe Mexican Wave? Yes, I have.

Alison When did you go there?

Joe Last month. I went for dinner with people from work.

Alison The Acropolis? That Greek place?

Brett I'm sure Joe's been there!

Joe No, I haven't. I haven't been to The Acropolis. But it closed a few months ago.

Brett Oh, this is ridiculous!

Alison OK, Joe, here's the answer. You cook dinner for us!

1

GRAMMAR BANK

1A present simple verb $be \pm$, subject pronouns

+ = positive form	① 1.4
full form	contraction
I am a student.	I'm a student.
You are my partner.	You're my partner.
He is Matt.	He's Matt.
She is Sally.	She's Sally.
It is a salsa class.	It's a salsa class.
We are students.	We're students.
You are partners.	You're partners.
They are teachers.	They're teachers.

- In contractions ' = a missing letter, e.g. 'm = am.
- We use contractions in conversation and in informal writing,
 e.g. an email to a friend.
- We always use a subject pronoun (you, he, etc.) with a verb.
 It's a school. NOT is a school.

They're teachers. NOT Are teachers.

- We always use capital I. With other pronouns we only use a capital letter when it's the first word in a sentence. He's Ben and I'm Sally. NOT i'm Sally.
- you = singular and plural.
- We use he for a man, she for a woman, and it for a thing.
- We use they for people and things.

1B present simple verb be = and ?

I'm not American. She isn't from Londo	n.	1.24
They aren't Spanish.		
'Are you Polish?'	'Yes, I am.'	
'Is she Russian?'	'No, she isn't.'	
'Are we in class 2?'	'No, we aren't.'	
= negative form		

= negative form				
full form	contraction			
I am not You are not He / She / It is not We are not You are not They are not	I'm not You aren't He / She / It isn't We aren't You aren't They aren't	Italian. Spanish. British.		

- We put *not* after the verb be to make negatives \Box . I'm **not** Italian.
- We can also contract are not and is not like this: You're not Italian. She's not Spanish.

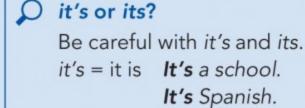
? = question form		x = negative short answer	
Am I Are you Is he / she / it Are we Are you Are they Are you Are they Are you	Yes, I am. you are. he / she / it is. we are. you are. they are.	No, I'm not. you aren't. he / she / it isn't. we aren't. you aren't. they aren't.	

- In questions we put am, are, is <u>before</u> I, you, he, etc.
 Are you Brazilian? NOT You are Brazilian?
 Where are you from? NOT Where you are from?
- We don't use contractions in positive short answers.
 'Are you Turkish?' 'Yes, I am.' NOT 'Yes, I'm.'

1C possessive adjectives

I'm Italian.	My family are from Rome. 1.43		
You're in Class 1.	This is your classroom.		
He 's the director.	His name is Michael.		
She's your teacher.	Her name is Tina.		
It's a language school.	Its name is English House.		
We're an international school.	Our students are from Europe and Asia.		
They're French students.	Their names are Luc and Marie.		

- We use possessive adjectives for people and things.
 My family are from Italy. My car is German.
- his = of a man, her = of a woman, its = of a thing.
- their = of people or things.
- Possessive adjectives don't change with plural nouns.
 our students NOT ours students



window.

10 We're from Liverpool. _____ surname is Connor.

14				
а	Complete with am, is, or are.	b Write the sente	ences with contractions.	
	I <u>am</u> Mike.	He is late.	He's late.	
	1 We from Córdoba.	1 It is Friday.		
	2 He early.	2 They are at scl		
	3 They teachers.	3 I am very well.		
	4 Today Wednesday.	4 You are in my	class	
	5 I sorry.	c Write the sente	nces with a subject pronoun (I, They, e	tc.) and a contraction.
	6 It a hotel.		nah are students. <u>They're</u>	
	7 You in room 402. 8 She a student.	1 John is in room		in room 5.
	9 My name Carla.	2 Sam and I are		friends.
	10 I in a taxi.	3 Julia is a teach		a teacher.
	IO I III a taxi.	4 The school is		
			nanda are in my class	
				6 p.7
1E	3			
а	Write negative sentences.		c Complete the conversation	on. Use contractions,
	She's Australian. She isn't A	Australian.	e.g. 'm, 's, if possible.	
	1 I'm British.		A Hi. I <u>'m</u> Mark.	
	2 They're Brazilian.		B Hello Mark. My name ¹	Maria.
	3 It's in South America.		you Spanish, M	aria?
	1 Varias Francis		B No. I ³ not. I ⁴ _	
L	Males averations and about annu-		A 5 you from Mexic	
D	Make questions and short answers. / you English?		B No. I ⁶ from Tijua	ına.
			A 7 Tijuana near Me	exico City?
	1 / I in room 10?		D 140, 10 10	in the north.
	2 / it Spanish?		A you in class 1.	
	3 / they students?		- 110:1 III 01000 E	
	4 / he from the USA?			
	5 / you Mike Bell?	x		6 p.9
10	•			
	Complete the sentences with a p	ossessive adjective	h (Circle the correct word	
ч				/ The image in
	My_ name's Gloria. I'm from Brazil. 1 The students are from Italy names are Susanna and Tito.		Mark and Simon are friends. The class 2.	ley) Their are in
				mama/a lmal
		ma is Pohossa	1 She's a new student. She / Her	name's ipek.
	2 She's in my class nar		2 Is they / their teacher British?	1
	3 We're in class 2 tead		3 My name's Soraya. I'm in you /	your class.
	4 London is famous for		4 Is she / her German?	ana la de le cel
	5 How do you spell sur		5 Peter is a teacher. He / His is from	om Ireland.
	6 This is my teacher na		6 What's he / his name?	2
	7 I'm from London ad Old Kent Road.	aress is 31,	7 Where are you / your friends fr	
		andra mlassa	8 We're French. We / Our names	
		ooks, please.	9 I'm Karen. I / My surname is WI	nite.
	9 Laura is in my class	Jesk is near the	10 She / Her is from Barcelona.	

p.11

2A singular and plural nouns

a / an, plurals

singular nouns	plural nouns	1 2.2
It's a book.	They're books.	
It's a watch.	They're watches.	
It's a diary.	They're diaries.	
It's an umbrella.	They're umbrellas.	
It's an identity card.	They're identity cards.	

- We use a / an with singular nouns.
- We use an with a noun beginning with a vowel (a, e, i, o, u).
- We use a with nouns beginning with u or eu when the sound = /jux/, e.g. a university, a euro.
- We don't use a / an with plural nouns.
 They're books. NOT They're a books.



Look at the board.

Answer the questions.

- We use the when we know which board, questions, etc.
 Look at the board. NOT Look at a board.
- We use the with singular and plural nouns (the board, the questions).

regular plurals

singular	plural	spelling
a book a key	books keys	add -s
a wat ch a box	watches boxes	add -es after ch, sh, s, x
a country a dictionary	countries dictionaries	consonant + $y = y - ies$

- We add -s (or -es or -ies) to make plural nouns.
 It's a pen. They're pens.
- With two-word nouns, we add -s (or -es or -ies) to the second noun.
 credit card, credit cards NOT credits cards

irregular plurals

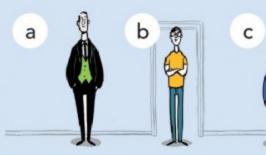
singular	plural
a man /mæn/	men/men/
a woman /ˈwʊmən/	women /'wimin/
a child /tʃaɪld/	children /ˈtʃɪldrən/
a person /'passn/	people /'pirpl/

2B adjectives

- 1 The White House is in Washington DC. ②2.8 It's a beautiful picture. It's an old book.
- 2 They're blue jeans. We're new students.
- 3 He's strong. We aren't rich. Is your car new?
- 4 She's quite famous. It's a very big city. We're really tired.

- 1 Adjectives go before a noun.

 It's a beautiful picture. **NOT** It's a picture beautiful.
- If an adjective begins with a vowel in an adjective + noun phrase, we use an. NOT It's a old house.
- 2 Adjectives don't change before a plural noun. They're blue jeans. **NOT** They're blues jeans.
- 4 We often use very, really, and quite before adjectives.
 - a He's very (or really) tall.
 - b He's quite tall.
 - c He isn't very tall.



2C imperatives, let's

- 1 Open the door. Turn right.
 Don't worry. Don't stop.
 Be quiet, please. Please sit down.
- 2 Let's go home. Let's not stop.
- Can you...?

Use Can you + verb (infinitive) as a polite alternative to an imperative.

Open the window. → Can you open the window, please?

- 1 We use imperatives to tell somebody to do (or not do) something.
- imperatives = verb (infinitive).
 imperatives = don't + verb (infinitive).
- We add please to be polite.
 Open the door, please.
- We often use be + adjective in imperatives, e.g. Be quiet., Be careful., etc.
- We don't use a pronoun with imperatives.
 Be quiet. NOT You be quiet.
- 2 We use Let's + verb (infinitive) to make suggestions. We use Let's not + verb (infinitive) to make negative suggestions.

9 coin

10 egg

2A

_	Comp	10+0	with	-	0	20	\\/rita	+ha	nlu	ıral	
a	Comp	iete	with	d	OI	an.	vvrite	tne	piu	ITal	

1	1		1
ne	р	lura	١.
	1		

b	Write
	pen

Write sente	nces with <i>It's</i> or	They're (and	a or ar	n if necessary)).
pen	It's a pen.				

si	ngular	plural
a	photo	photos
1 _	window	
2 _	key	
3 _	identity card	
4 _	country	
5 _	watch	
6 _	exercise	
7 _	person	
8 _	email	

	Poli	TE S G POTT.
	buses	They're buses.
1	children	
2	purse	
3	men	
4	umbrella	
5	sunglasses	
6	scissors	

5	sunglasses	- <u> </u>
6	scissors	
7	charger	
8	diaries	

61				

	12	
n	1	E
۲	• •	٠

2B

10 _____

Circle the correct sentence.

box

woman

(He's a rich man.) / He's a man rich.

- 1 It's a very big house. / It's a house very big.
- 2 Is Louis French? / Is French Louis?
- 3 It's a watch expensive. / It's an expensive watch.
- 4 Is it an easy exercise? / Is it an exercise easy?
- 5 Is Spanish your girlfriend? / Is your girlfriend Spanish?
- 6 These questions are very difficult. / These questions are very difficults.
- 7 Are they tickets cheaps? / Are they cheap tickets?
- 8 My new glasses are very good. / My news glasses are very goods.

b Put the words in the correct order.

is Chinese he? Is he Chinese?

1 a day very It's hot

2 your Australian Is teacher ?

3 car fast isn't That very

4 a idea bad It's

5 Are students you good ?

6 easy is English quite

7 strong My is brother really

8 train slow is This a

p.	

16

2C

Complete with a verb from the list. Use a \pm or a imperative.

be) (x	2) go have open read speak take watch	worry
		It's hot. B Open the window.	
		I'm very sorry. B <u>Don't worry.</u> It isn't a problem.	
1	Α	I'm bored.	
	В	a book.	
2	Α	Me puedes dar una fotocopia, por favor?	
		This is an English class. Please	Spanish.
3		I'm tired.	
	В	It's late to bed.	
4		Is this programme good?	
		No, it isn't it.	
5		I'm hungry.	
		a sandwich.	
6	Α	It's a dangerous street.	
		Yes careful.	
7	Α	It's raining.	
	В	an umbrella.	
8		It's dark. I'm frightened.	

_ frightened. I'm here with you.

Complete with Let's or Let's not and a verb from the list.

	It's hot. <u>Let's open</u> th	he window.
1	Come on, it's late	
2	It's 11.00 p.m and go to bed.	the TV
3	This exercise is difficult it together.	ılt
4	expensive. The bus is	taxi. They're very fine.
5	There's a service stati and have a coffee.	on
6	It's very cold	to the
	cinema home.	a DVD at

GRAMMAR BANK

3A present simple \pm and \equiv

I speak English. **3.5** British people like gardens. My mother cooks fantastic food. I don't drink tea. We don't live in a house with a garden. He doesn't play the guitar.

+ I don't work. I work. You work. You don't work. He / She / It doesn't work. He / She / It works. We work. We don't work. You work. You don't work. They work. They don't work.

- We use the present simple for things that are generally true or are
- Contractions: don't = do not, doesn't = does not.
- To make negatives we use don't / doesn't + verb (infinitive). He doesn't work. NOT He doesn't works.

spelling rules for he / she / it

I work / play / live. I watch / finish / go / do. I study.

He works / plays / lives. She watches / finishes / goes / does. She studies.

 The spelling rules for the he / she / it forms are the same as for regular plurals (see Grammar Bank 2A p.126).

Be careful with some he / she / it forms I have he has /hæz/ NOT he haves he goes /gəuz/ 1 go

he does /daz/

3B present simple ?

'Do you live in New York?' 'No, we don't.' 3.9 'Yes, he does.' 'Does he work at night?' X ? Do I work? Ido. I don't. Do you work? you do. you don't. Does he / she / it work? he / she / it does. he / she / it doesn't. No, Yes, Do we work? we do. we don't. Do you work? you don't. you do. Do they work? they don't. they do.

- We use do (or does with he, she, it) + infinitive to make questions.
- The word order for present simple questions is ASI = Auxiliary verb (do, does), Subject (I, you, he, she, etc.), Infinitive (work, live, etc.).

O do and does

do = /dux/, does = /dAx/do and does can be:

- 1 the auxiliary verb to make present simple questions. **Do** you speak English? **Does** she live here?
- 2 a normal verb. I do my homework in the evening.

He **does** exercise every day.

1 do

3C word order in questions

Questions with be

Question word / phrase	be	◆3.22
	ls Are	she from Spain? your friends here?
VA/I		
What	's	your dog's name?
Where	's	your office?
How many students	are	in the class?
How	are	you?
How old	is	she?

• Remember the word order in questions with be. We put be before the subject.

Questions with other verbs

Question word / phrase	Auxiliary	Subject	Infinitive 3.23
	Do Does	you your mother	live near here? know?
What	do	you	do?
Where	does	he	live?
How many children	do	you	have?
What kind of music	does	she	like?
How	do	you	spell your surname?

- The word order for present simple questions with do and does is ASI (Auxiliary, Subject, Infinitive), e.g. Do you live near here? or QuASI (Question, Auxiliary, Subject, Infinitive), e.g. Where does he live?
- We often use question phrases beginning with What, e.g. What colour ... ?, What time ... ?, etc.

3A

JA						
a C	hange the sentences.			b		e sentences with
	My mum drinks tea. I <u>drink tea.</u>				a 🛨 or a 🗕 v	erb.
1	I go to the cinema. She					
	We live in a flat. He					ten play read speak
	She has two children. They				study wear	work
	My dad doesn't like cold weather. I				+ They stud	dy economics.
	The shops close at 5.30. The supermarket					in an office.
						books in English.
	We don't study French. My sister					Arabic very well.
	My husband does housework. I					games on my phone.
	I want a guitar. My son					garries on my priorie. glasses.
	I don't work on Saturdays. My friend					to music in the car.
10	The programme finishes at 5.00. Our lessons _					
						fast food.
					8 🛨 Julia	three children.
3B						(-) p.22
a C	omplete the questions with do or does.	b N	Make questions u	ising a	pronoun and	the bold verb.
			•			ork at the weekend?
1	Do you work with a computer?		A I don't play th	_		
1	you have a dog?	1				
	you speak a foreign language?		A He likes sport			
3	she play the guitar?			_		German?
4	he work or study?					pizzas?
5	5 school children in your country					lasagne?
	wear uniforms?		A Teresa doesn'			
	Jamie study French?		the state of the s			an iPhone?
7	your husband cook?	7	A My dad drive	s a Fer	rari. B	fast?
8	it rain a lot in your country?	8	A Sarah drinks	a lot of	f tea. B	it with milk?
9	the students in this class speak	9	A We have two	childre	en. B	boys or girls?
	good English?	10	A I don't listen	to the	radio. B	to music
10	Angela like her job?				on yo	our phone?
3C						
а О	rder the words to make questions.	b C	Complete the qu	estior	ns in the conve	rsation.
	you live where do ?		Who <u>do you live</u>			
	Where do you live?		I live with my par			
1			- 1		your father	2
	children how many do you have ?		¹ What			:
	interesting is job your ?		He's retired. My			2
	colour is his what car ?		Where 2			
	brother your where work does ?		In Bristol. She wo			
	you with work computers do ?		3			
6	read of what do kind you		Yes, she loves it.			
_	magazines ?					during the day?
7	do what does weekend he at	В	He works in the	garder	n, and he cooks	in the evening.
_	the ?	A	5		a good cook?	
	stressed you your job are in ?	В	Yes, fantastic. He	e make	es very good cur	ries.
	your where does sister live ?	A	6	he als	0	_ housework?
10	do how English you say that in ?	В	Yes, he does. I h	elp too	Э.	
		A	What ⁷	(H)		?
			I make breakfast			

(-) p.27

GRAMMAR BANK

4A possessive 's, Whose...?

- 1 He's Brad Pitt's brother. It's James's laptop.
- **1** 4.2

4.20

- 2 It's my parents' car.
- 3 'Whose is this bag?' 'It's Maria's.'
- 4 The end of the film is fantastic. I live in the city centre.
- 1 We use a person + 's to talk about family and possessions. He's Brad Pitt's brother. NOT He's the brother of Brad Pitt.
- 2 With regular plural nouns we put the 'after the s. It's my parents' car. NOT It's my parent's car.
- With irregular plural nouns, e.g. children, men, we use 's, e.g the children's room, men's clothes.

- 3 We use Whose...? to ask about possessions. We can ask Whose is this bag? OR Whose bag is this? We can answer It's Maria's bag. OR It's Maria's.
- 4 We don't usually use a thing + 's, e.g. the end of the class **NOT** the class's end, the city centre **NOT** the city's centre.



Be careful with 's. It can be two things: Maria's Spanish - 's = isMaria's mother - 's = of Maria

Whose / Who's

Who's = Who is, e.g. 'Who's that girl?' 'She's my sister.' Whose = of who, e.g. 'Whose is this bag?' 'It's Jack's.' Whose and Who's are pronounced the same /huːz/.

4B prepositions of time and place

Time

in	on	at 1 4.13
the morning the afternoon the evening the summer December 2018	Monday (morning) 1 January	three o'clock midday / midnight lunchtime night the weekend Christmas

- We use in for parts of the day, seasons, months, and years.
- We use on for days and dates.
- · We use at for times of the day, night, the weekend, and festivals.

Place and movement

1 He has lunch at work. He works in an office. **1**4.14

- 2 He goes to work at 8.00.
- 1 We use at and in for place.
- We use at + work, home, school, university.
- We use in + other places, e.g. a flat, an office, a room, etc.
- We can use in or at with some public places, e.g. a restaurant, the cinema, etc. On Saturdays he usually has lunch in / at a restaurant.
- 2 We use to for movement or direction. She goes to the gym. NOT She goes at the gym. We don't use to before home. go home NOT go to home

4C position of adverbs, expressions of frequency

- 1 I always watch TV in the evening. Do you **usually** sleep eight hours a day? She **sometimes** does sport. She doesn't **often** go to bed late.
- 2 They're hardly ever late. He isn't **often** stressed.
- 3 I have English classes twice a week. She doesn't work every day.

Are you usually in this classroom?

- 1 We use adverbs and expressions of frequency to say how often you do something.
 - 'How often do you cook?' 'I cook every evening.'
- Adverbs of frequency go <u>before</u> the main verb.
- In negative sentences the adverb of frequency goes between don't / doesn't and the verb.
- 2 Adverbs of frequency go <u>after</u> be in \oplus and \Box sentences. In 1 with be the adverb of frequency goes after the subject.
- We use a
 ⊕ verb with hardly ever and never. He's never stressed. NOT He isn't never stressed.
- 3 Expressions of frequency usually go at the end of a sentence or verb phrase.

4A

Look at the pictures. Answer the questions with a short sentence.



	Whose is the laptop?	It's Bill's laptop.
	Whose are the cars?	
)	Whose is the purse?	
	Whose are the magazines?	

It's	Bill's	laptop.
		1

С	Comp	lete w	ith W	hose c	or Who	's

Monica Cruz is Penelope's sister/ sister's Penelope.

3 I'm tired when I go home at the end of the day / the day's end.

5 The door of the classroom / The classroom's door is open.

1 It's my mother's birthday / my birthday's mother.

2 That's her parent's house / her parents' house.

4 Those are friends' my sister / my sister's friends.

6 Those are the students' desks / the desk's students.

b Circle the correct form.

Who	car is this?
Who	s the man with dark hair
1	book is this?
2	phone is that?
3	your favourite singer?
4	Kevin's girlfriend?
5	bag is this?
6	their English teacher?

9	p.30	
	0	

4B

Complete with at, in, or on.

4 Whose is the watch?

5 Whose are the glasses?

or	_ Saturday
1 _	the evening
2 _	22nd September
3	the summer
4	7.30
5	night
6 _	Wednesday afternoon
7 _	the weekend
8	January
9 _	2020

Complete with at, in, or to.

	We go to school by bus.
1	Sorry, John isn't here. He's work.
2	It's a beautiful day. Let's go the beach.
3	Sally's boyfriend works a factory.
4	My brother studies maths Manchester University.
5	I go the gym on Tuesdays and Thursdays.
6	I work an office.
7	We live a modern flat.
8	It's Monday. The children are school.
9	My father is a doctor. He works a hospital.
0	Jack isn't home. He's with a friend.

4C

Put the adverb of frequency in the correct place in the sentence.

> They drive – they don't have a car. **never** They never drive - they don't have a car.

- 1 I walk to work. always
- 2 Do you wear glasses? usually
- 3 I'm bored. hardly ever
- 4 She does housework. sometimes
- 5 We go to the cinema. hardly ever
- 6 Why are you late? always
- 7 My girlfriend is stressed. never
- 8 Does it rain in December? often

b Order the words to make sentences.

always she at six up gets She always gets up at six.

- 1 for late never I am class
- 2 eat ever fast hardly we food
- 3 what work you usually time do finish ?
- 4 parents out night often my go don't at
- 5 always brother lunchtime is my hungry at
- 6 don't homework always our we do
- 7 you work usually to do drive ?
- 8 hardly teacher angry is our ever

(34)

5A can / can't

- 1 I can sing, but I can't dance.
- **3**5.5
- 2 I can come on Tuesday, but I can't come on Wednesday.
- 3 You can park here. You can't park there.
- 4 Can you help me? Can I open the window?
- can + infinitive has different meanings:
 - 1 I can (sing) = I know how to. I can't (dance) = I don't know how to.
 - 2 I can (come) = It's possible for me.
 I can't (come) = It's not possible for me.
 - 3 You can (park here) = It's OK. / It's permitted. You can't (park here) = It's not OK. / It's not permitted.
 - 4 Can you (help me)? = Please do it. Can I (open the window)? = Is it OK if I do it?

+					-					
	u / He / She / /e / They	can	swim come help.		I / You / It / We			can't	swim com help	e.
?			+							
Can	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	swim? come? help?	Yes,	I/you he/s we/t	he / it /	can.	No,	I / you / he / she / we / they		can't.

- can and can't are the same for all persons (I, you, he, etc.).
 NOT He cans.
- Contraction: can't = cannot.
- We don't use to after can.
 I can swim. NOT I can to swim.

5B present continuous

They're having a party next door.
Oh no! The baby's crying.

- **3**5.12
- It's raining.

 A What are you doing?

 B I'm waiting for my brother.

 +
- I'm You're You aren't He / She / It's He / She / It isn't We're They're They aren't
- X ? Am I I'm not. I am. you aren't. you are. Are you having No, he/she/it isn't. Is he / she / it he / she / it is. a party? we aren't. Are we we are. they aren't. Are they they are.

- We use the present continuous for things that are happening now / at the moment.
- At the moment can mean around now.
 I'm reading a good book at the moment.
 (= not exactly now)
- We also use the present continuous with longer periods of time, e.g. today, this week, this month. The present continuous emphasizes that the action is temporary, not a habit.

I'm working at home this week because my daughter isn't very well.

infinitive	verb + -ing	spelling
cook, read study, try	cooking, reading studying, trying	+ -ing
dance, live	dancing, living	e -ing
shop, swim	shopping, swimming	one vowel + one consonant: double consonant +-ing

5C present simple or present continuous?

present simple

It always snows here in winter.

What do you usually do at work?

My sister works in a bank.

present continuous ①5.20

Look! It's snowing.

What are you doing now?

Today she's working at home.

- What do you do? or What are you doing?
 A What do you do? (= What's your job?)
 B I'm a teacher.
 A What are you doing? (= now, at the moment)
 B I'm waiting for a friend.
- We use the **present simple** to say what we <u>usually</u> do, or things that are normally true.
- We often use the present simple with adverbs and expressions of frequency, e.g. always, often, once a week, etc.
- We use the present continuous to say what is happening now or around now.
- We often use the present continuous with at the moment, today, this week.

5A

a Complete the sentences with can or can't a
--

	I'm sorry. I <u>can't remembe</u>	<u>er</u> your name. (remember)
1	My girlfriend (speak)	French, but not Spanish.
2	you	me? This box is very heavy. (help)
3	l you to	onight. I have a lot of homework. (see
4	t	the window? It's cold in here. (close)
5	you	_ your email address, please? (repeat)
6	It says 'No parking'. We _	here. (park)
7	Andy doesn't want to go (swim)	to the beach. He
8	I	our phone? I want to call my parents.
	(use)	

b Rewrite the sentences using the correct form of *can* or *can't*.

	I know how to play the piano.	
	I can play the piano.	
1	It's possible for her to meet me after work. She	
2	Please open the door.	
	you	?
3	My boyfriend doesn't know how to ski. My boyfriend	
4	Is it OK if I use your car?	
		?
5	It's not permitted to take photos here. You	

0	p.39

5B

a Write a question and an answer.



What's he doing?	He's cooking.	
		<u> </u>
		<u> </u>
2		<u> </u>

- **b** Put the verbs in brackets in the present continuous.
 - A Hello Tina. Where are you?

В	I'm in Bristol. I'm	visiting	(visit) my parents	
	[¹		(stay) with	n them for a week.
	² What	you		(do)?
Α	³	6531	(look for) a job	. At the moment
	4		(look) at job a	dverts online.
В	Good luck! 5		you still	(live)

with your parents?

A Yes. But I'm not at home really, I'm usually at my girlfriend's flat.

В	⁶ What	she	(do) now?
	7	she still	(study) drama?
Α	No, she 8		(work) in a café, but

- she 9______ (not enjoy) it much.

 She 10_____ (look for) a job as an actress.
- **B** Well, maybe we can all have a drink together next week.
- A Good idea. On Friday?

_	
	- 1
	p.4

5C

- a Circle the correct form.
 - A What do you cook / are you cooking? I'm really hungry.
 - **B** Spaghetti. We can eat in ten minutes.
 - 1 A Hello. Is Martin at home?
 - **B** No, he isn't. He plays / He's playing football with his friends.
 - 2 A Do your parents live / Are your parents living near here?
 - **B** Yes. They have / are having a flat in the same building as me.
 - 3 A How often do you go / are you going to the hairdresser's?
 - **B** About once a month. When my hair needs / is needing a cut.
 - 4 A Don't make a noise! Your father sleeps / is sleeping!
 - **B** Is he OK? He doesn't usually sleep / isn't usually sleeping in the afternoon.

b Put the verbs in the present simple or continuous.

	Lo	ook. It <u>'s raining</u> . (ra	ain)	
1	Α	Hi, Sarah! What	you	here? (do)
		I		
2	Α	Let's have lunch hamburgers? (like)		ou
	В	No, sorry. I'm a veg meat. (not eat)		
3	Α	Listen! The neight a party again. (hav		
	В	They(have)		ry weekend!
4	Α	What	your boyfriend_	? (do)
		He's a teacher. He school. (work)		

6A object pronouns

subject pronoun	object pronoun	€ 6.2
l	me	Can you help me ?
you	you	I love you .
he	him	She doesn't love him .
she	her	He phones her every day.
it we they	it us them	I don't like it . Wait for us ! Please help them .

- Pronouns take the place of nouns.
- We use subject pronouns when the noun is the subject of a verb (i.e. the person who does the action).
 John is a doctor. He lives in London.

- We use object pronouns when the noun is the object of a verb (i.e. the person who receives the action).
 Anna knows John. She sees him every week.
- Object pronouns go <u>after</u> the verb.
 I love you. NOT I you love.

Object pronouns after prepositions

We also use object pronouns after prepositions (with, to, from, etc.).

I'm in love with her.

NOT I'm in love with she.

Give this money to **him**.

NOT Give this money to he.

6B like + (verb + -ing)



infinitive	verb + -ing	spelling
cook, read study, try	cooking, reading studying, trying	+ -ing
dance, live	dancing, living	e -ing
shop, swim	shopping, swimming	one vowel + one consonant: double consonant +-ing

- We use verb + -ing after like, love, don't mind, and hate.
- We can also use verb + -ing after enjoy and prefer.
 I enjoy watching football on TV, but I prefer being there.

6C be or do?

be

1	Hi. I'm Jim.	1 6.19
	She isn't very friendly.	
	Are you Hungarian?	
2	I can't talk. I'm driving.	
	They aren't working today.	
	Is it raining?	

- 1 We use be as a main verb.
- 2 We also use be to form the present continuous. Be here is an auxiliary verb.
- Remember to invert be and the subject to make questions. He's Spanish. Is he Spanish?

do / does

- 1 I'm doing my homework.
 Do you do your homework regularly?
 2 Do you speak English?
 Where do they live?
 They don't have children.
 Does your sister have a car?
 Where does your father work?
 Alan doesn't like jazz.
- 1 We use do as a main verb.
- 2 We also use do / does to make questions and don't / doesn't to make negatives in the present simple. Do here is an auxiliary verb.
- Remember ASI and QuASI (see Grammar Bank 3C p.128).

6A

а	Rewrite the sentences. Change the highlighted words to object pronouns.				
	I call my mother once a week.				
	I call her once a week.				

I call	my	moth	ner	once	а	week	<.
I call	her	once	a	week			

- 1 I can't find my wallet.
- 2 She speaks to her father in German.
- 3 He meets his friends after work.
- 4 Can you help my friend and me?
- 5 Ivan is angry with his girlfriend.
- 6 My son doesn't like cats.

b	Complete the sentences with subject pronouns (I, he, etc.) o
	object pronouns (me, him, etc.).

John is American. He	_ lives in California,	with his parents.	Не
argues with them a le	ot.		

- 1 My mother has a big house in the country. _____ likes ____ a lot. We often visit _____ on Sundays – she invites _____ for lunch.
- 2 I am very lucky with my neighbours. ____ often help ____ with the children. They collect _____ from school when ____ work late.
- 3 Mark loves Ruth but she doesn't like _____. He calls _____ every day but _____ doesn't want to speak to _____.
- 4 My brother has two big dogs. _____ takes ____ for a walk twice a day. I don't like _____ very much because _____ bark at ____.
- 5 We often take my grandfather some magazines, but _____ never reads _____. He watches TV all day and never turns _____ off.

(3)	p.4

6B

Write the -ing form of the verbs in the chart.

com	е	cook	dan	се	eat	get	have
run	S	leep	stop	sti	udy	swim	write

1 verb + -ing	work	working	
2 verb ending in e	live	living	coming
3 double consonant	shop	shopping	

Write sentences about Matt with love, like, not mind, not like, or hate, and a verb.

2		

6			
7			
8			

(tennis, to the cinema	
	the dog for a walk, music	
<u>-</u>	housework, in an office	
<u>::</u>	football on TV, novels	
×.	lunch with his parents, a tie	



(3)	n.	4
	Ρ.	

6C

Put the phrases in the correct column.

doing your homework have a car hungry know those people like classical music listening to me live in the city centre stressed tired speak Russian waiting for a friend

Are you?	Do you?
doing your homework	

b Complete the conversations with the correct form of be or do. Use contractions where possible.

A Do you speak German?

B Yes, but I <u>don't</u> often practise it.

1 A Where _____ Gemma going?

B She _____ going to the gym.

2 A _____ you play tennis?

B Yes, but I _____ play very well.

3 **A** _____ Matt like shopping? **B** He ____ mind it.

4 A Why _____ you crying? B Because I _____ sad.

5 A _____ your boyfriend cook?

B Yes. He _____ making dinner right now.

6 **A** ______ you busy?

B Yes. We _____ doing our homework.

7 A How old _____ your father?

B He's 66 but he _____ want to retire.

8 A ______ you watching TV?

B No. I ______ playing a video game.

17.9

7

GRAMMAR BANK

7A past simple of be: was / were

Vincent van Gogh was an artist.

Was he Dutch or French?

She wasn't in class yesterday.

The Beatles were famous in the 1960s.

Where were you last night? You weren't at home.

- We use was / were to talk about the past.
- We often use was / were with past time expressions, e.g. yesterday, last night, in 2014, etc.
- We use was / were with born.
 I was born in Scotland.

+				[
I / He / 9	I / He / She / It		was there.		/ He / She / It	wasn't there.		
You / W	e / They	were th	nere.	You / We / They		weren't there.		
?						X		
Was	I / he / sh	e/it	famous?		Yes, I was.	No, I wasn't.		
Were	you / we /	/ they	ramous?				Yes, you were.	No, you weren't.

7B past simple: regular verbs

- I booked the flights yesterday.
 We arrived at the airport at 10.00 this morning.
- When I was young I watched TV every night.
 I worked as a waiter every weekend when I was at university.
- We use the past simple for:
 - 1 finished actions that happened once in the past.
 - 2 finished actions that happened more than once in the past.

+									
	ou / He / She / Ve / They	worked ye	esterda	sterday. I / You / He / Sh It / We / They			e/	didn't work yesterday.	
?			V		X				
Did	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	work yesterday?	Yes,	I / you / he / she / it / we / they		did.	No,	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	didn't.

- Contraction: didn't = did not.
- Regular verbs in the past \pm end in -ed, e.g. worked, lived, played.
- The past simple is the same for all persons (I, you, she, etc.).
- We use did / didn't + infinitive for past simple ② and □. Did is the past of do.

infinitive	past	spelling
watch play	watched played	add -ed
arrive	arrived	add -d
study	studied	consonant + y: y -ied
stop	stopped	one vowel + one consonant: double consonant + -ed

7C past simple: irregular verbs

I went to Iceland in December. I didn't go to New York.

7.15

Did you go to a party? Who did you go with?

infinitive	past +	past _
buy	bought	didn't buy
come	came	didn't come
feel	felt	didn't feel
find	found	didn't find
get	got	didn't get
go	went	didn't go
have	had	didn't have
know	knew	didn't know
put on	put on	didn't put on
say	said	didn't say
take	took	didn't take
think	thought	didn't think
wear	wore	didn't wear

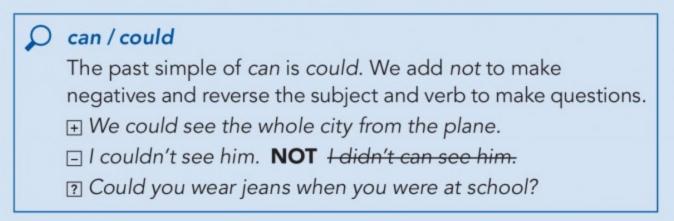
- Some verbs are irregular in the past

 and change their form,
 e.g. go → went, have → had.
- We only use the irregular past form in

 sentences.

 I bought a bag last night.
- We use the infinitive after did / didn't.
 Did you go out last night? NOT Did you went...?
- Remember word order in questions: ASI (Auxiliary, Subject, Infinitive), e.g. Did you go shopping yesterday?
 QuASI (Question word, Auxiliary, Subject, Infinitive), e.g. Where did you go?

Look at the list of irregular verbs on p.165.



7A

a Rewrite the sentences in the past sim	mple	ts	past	the	in	sentences	the	Rewrite	a
---	------	----	------	-----	----	-----------	-----	---------	---

	present simple My father's at work.	Yesterday My father was at work.
1	She's at home today.	at home.
2	Where are you now?	Where?
3	I'm in Edinburgh.	in Edinburgh.
4	Is it hot today?	hot?
5	It isn't open now.	open.
6	They aren't in the office.	in the office.
7	We're in Rome now.	in Rome.
8	They're tired.	tired.
9	We aren't late.	late.
10	I'm not at school.	at school.

b	Complete the conversation with was, wasn'	ť
	were, or weren't.	

Α	Were you an	d Charlie at the concert l	ast night?
В	Yes, we ¹		
Α	2	_ it good?	
В	No, it ³	The singer ⁴	terrible.
Α	5	the tickets expensive?	
В	Yes, they ⁶		
С	Where ⁷	your mother bo	orn?
D	She 8	born in Argentina	in 1955.
С	9	her parents Argentinia	n?
D	No, they ¹⁰	Her father ¹¹	
	German and	her mother ¹²	from Italy.

	-	
-	n h	
	P.0	

7B

a Rewrite the sentences in the past simple.

	present simple	past simple
	We watch TV.	We watched TV yesterday evening.
1	I study English.	at school.
2	Do you listen to the news?	yesterday?
3	He doesn't cook.	last night.
4	Does she play sport?	at university?
5	They work late.	last week.
6	She travels a lot.	in 2018.
7	Jack works in New York.	five years ago.
8	I call my parents every day.	yesterday.
9	We don't live in France.	ten years ago.
10	Anna asks a lot of questions.	at the meeting.

b Complete the sentences with a verb in the past simple.

	ok not call cry dance finish t listen play
	We <u>finished</u> work late yesterday.
1	I my mother on her birthday
2	The film was very sad you?
3	My brother video games all day yesterday.
4	I to the news this morning.
5	Sarah with
	Martin at the party?
6	We our hotel rooms online.

on	II	n	le
6)	p

Service.	
-	

7C

a Correct the information using the word in brackets.

	She put on a coat. (jacket) She didn't put on a coat. She put on a jacket.	
1	She wore a red dress. (blue)	
2	I came home early. (late)	
3	We went by train. (bus)	
4	He said hello. (goodbye)	
5	You had a sandwich. (salad)	
6	He knew her surname. (first name)	

Complete the text with the verbs in brackets in the past simple. All the verbs are irregular.

Last New Ye	ear's Eve I <u>wen</u>	t (go) to London	with some friends.	
We ¹	(have) dir	nner at a Chinese	restaurant, and at 1	10.00
p.m. we ²	(tak	e) a taxi to Trafalg	ar Square. We	
3	_ (be) there fo	or an hour, and the	en we ⁴	(go)
to the river.	We ⁵	(can) see the f	ireworks very well,	and
we ⁶	(have) a gre	at time. We ⁷	(get) home at	4.00
a.m. We ⁸	(feel)	tired, but we ⁹	(be) very ha	арру!

c Complete the questions in the past simple.

	A <u>Did you go out</u> last night?	
	B No, I stayed at home.	
1	A What	yesterday?
	B I wore jeans.	
2 ,	A Where	her shoes?
	B She bought them in Paris.	

B We got home late.

3 A What time _____

8A past simple: regular and irregular

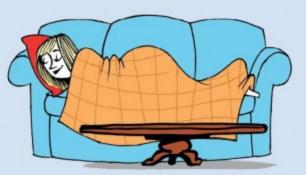
1 was / were and could

38.9

- + Gordon was Jeremy's business partner. They were at his country house.
 - They **could** hear a strange noise.
- She wasn't at home last night. You weren't very nice to her. I couldn't sleep.
- ? Were you ill yesterday? When was he born? Could you see anybody in the library?
- 2 regular verbs
 - + I really liked the present. She wanted to be a doctor.
 - She didn't enjoy the concert. They didn't arrive until very late.
 - ? Did you watch the match last night? When did you finish the book?
- 3 irregular verbs
 - + I went to Paris last summer. She slept on the sofa.
 - He didn't come home last night. They didn't hear the music.
 - ? Did you speak to your sister yesterday? Where did you have lunch?

- 1 The past of be is was / were, and the past of can is could. We add not to make negatives and reverse the subject and verb to make questions.
- 2 Regular verbs add -ed or -d in the past simple \pm , e.g. want-wanted, like-liked.
- 3 Irregular verbs change their form in the past simple \pm , e.g. go-went, see-saw.
- Regular and irregular verbs (except can) use:
 - didn't + infinitive to make negatives, e.g. I didn't like it. She didn't see him.
 - did + subject + infinitive to make questions, e.g. Did you want to come? Where did she go?





I went to Paris last summer.

She slept on the sofa.

8B there is / there are, some / any + plural nouns

singular	plural 🕠 8.15
+ There's a garage There isn't a swimming pool. ? Is there a bathroom downstairs?	There are some pictures on the wall. There aren't any plants in the room. Are there any neighbours with children?
✓ Yes, there is. ✓ No, there isn't.	Yes, there are. No, there aren't.

there is / there are

- · We use there is / there are to say that something exists or doesn't exist, e.g. There's a bathroom upstairs. There isn't a bathroom downstairs.
- We use there is + a singular noun and there are + plural nouns.
- There is is often contracted to There's. There are is not usually contracted.
- When we talk about a list of things we use there is if the first word in the list is singular or there are if the first word in the list is plural. In my bedroom **there's a** bed, two chairs, and a desk. In the living room there are two armchairs and a sofa.

a / an, some, and any

- We often use there is / isn't with a / an, and there are / aren't with some and any.
- We use some and any with plural nouns. Some = not an exact number, e.g. There are some eggs in the fridge.
- We use *some* in \pm sentences and *any* in \pm and 2.

There is / There are or It is / They are?

Be careful. There is and It is are different.

There's a key on the table. It's the key to the kitchen.

There are three bedrooms in the flat. **They're** all quite small.

8C there was / there were

singular	plural	◆8.21
 + There was a big mirror. - There wasn't a TV. ? Was there a bathroom? 	There were four lam There weren't any g Were there any wind	hosts.
Yes, there was. No, there wasn't.	Yes, there were. No, there weren't.	

• there was / there were is the past of there is / there are. We use there was / there were to say that something existed or didn't exist, e.g. There were two computers in the office, but there wasn't a printer.

8A

а	Complete the conversation using the past simple o	f
	the verbs in brackets.	

A Where <u>were</u> (be) you last night at 8.00?

B I ¹_____ (be) at home, Inspector. With my wife. We ²_____ (be) at home all evening.

A ³ What ______ you _____ (do)?

B We 4_____ (watch) TV and then we 5_ (have) a light dinner. We 6_____ (not be) hungry. After that, we 7 _____ (go) to bed.

A 8 What time ______ you _____ (go) to bed?

B About 10 o'clock.

A 9______ you _____ (hear) a noise during the night?

B No, I ¹⁰_____ (not hear) anything.

b Complete the sentences with the past simple of a verb from the list.

arrive not can hear read see sit sleep speak not want

They <u>spoke</u> quietly for a few minutes.

1 I _____ very badly last night.

2 She ______ a strange noise. 3 We _____ find our keys.

4 I _____ three books last week.

5 They _____ at the airport at 11.30.

6 He _____ her with another man.

7 We ______ together last class.

8 You _____ to come.

G p.63

8B

Complete with \pm or ? of *There's* or *There are*.

There's a dishwasher in the kitchen. <u>Are there</u> any people in the room?

1 _____ any books on the shelf?

2 _____ a toilet downstairs? 3 _____ some stairs over there.

4 _____ a carpet on the floor. 5 _____ some pictures on the wall.

6 _____ a shower in the bathroom?

7 _____ some chairs in the garden.

8 _____ a lamp in the bedroom? 9 _____ a motorbike in the garage.

10 _____ any glasses in the cupboard?

b Write + or - sentences or ? with there is / are

+ a / an, some, or any.

+ trees / the garden There are some trees in the garden.

1 + table / the kitchen.

2 ? fireplace / the living room?

3 - plants / my flat.

4 ? people / the garden?

5 + pictures / my bedroom.

6 - TV / the kitchen.

7 + computer / the study.

8 - cupboards / the dining room.

9 ? bath / the bathroom?

10 - light / the garage.



8C

Complete with the correct form of there was or there were.

A How many guests were there in the hotel?

four including me. a French tourist and two businessmen.

 A^4 a restaurant?

____, but ⁶ **B** No, ⁵_____ _____ a bar.

A 7______ ____ a TV in your room?

_____, but ⁹ B Yes, 8_ _____ any chairs.

A How many beds 10

B One. A double bed.

Complete the sentences with there was / were / wasn't / weren't + a, some, or any.

There were some ghosts in the haunted castle I stayed in.

1 My sister didn't have a shower because

spider in the bath.

2 We couldn't watch the news because _____ TV in our room.

3 I couldn't sleep on the plane because _____ noisy children behind me.

4 They couldn't play tennis because _____ tennis balls.

5 She didn't have a coffee because _____ cups.

6 He took a lot of photos because _____ beautiful view of the town.

7 They couldn't park near the restaurant because car park.

G p.67

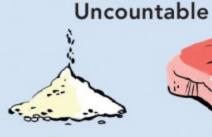


9A countable / uncountable nouns, a / an, some / any

Countable







rice



an apple

three apples

meat

• English nouns can be countable and uncountable. countable = things you can count, e.g. apples. Countable nouns can be singular (an apple) or plural (apples). uncountable = things you can't count, e.g. rice, meat NOT two rices, three meats.

Uncountable nouns are normally singular.

• Some nouns can be countable or uncountable, e.g. ice cream.





an ice cream (countable)

some ice cream (uncountable)

a / an, some / any

	countable	uncountable	1 9.2
+ We need	an apple. some apples.	some butter.	
⊡ We don't need	a tomato. any tomatoes.	any rice.	
? Do we need	an orange? any oranges?	any sugar?	

- We use a / an with singular countable nouns. a / an = one.
- We use some in + with plural countable nouns and with uncountable nouns.
- We use any in □ and ② with plural countable nouns and with uncountable nouns.



some in ?

We use some in ? to ask for and offer things.

Can I have **some** sugar, please? Would you like **some** coffee?

9B quantifiers

uncountable (singular)	short answers	full answers		
How much sugar do you eat?	A lot. Quite a lot. A little. Not much. None.	I eat a lot of sugar. I eat quite a lot of sugar. I eat a little sugar. I don't eat much sugar. I don't eat any sugar.		
countable (plural)				
How many sweets do you eat? A lot. Quite a lot. A few. Not many. None.		I eat a lot of sweets. I eat quite a lot of sweets. I eat a few sweets. I don't eat many sweets. I don't eat any sweets.		



a lot of and lots of

A lot of and lots of mean the same thing, e.g. He eats a lot of cheese / lots of cheese.

- We use How much...? with uncountable nouns and How many...? with plural countable nouns.
- We use: a lot (of) with countable and uncountable nouns for a big quantity.

quite a lot (of) for a medium quantity.

a little / not...much with uncountable nouns for a small quantity.

a few / not...many with countable plural nouns for a small quantity.

not...any (none in short answers) for zero quantity.

a lot of and much / many

- In
 ⊕ sentences we usually use a lot of.
- In \square sentences and ? we usually use *much* and *many*. I don't drink much water. Do you drink much coffee?
- It is also possible to use a lot of in \square and \square . I don't eat a lot of vegetables. Do you drink a lot of coffee?

9C comparative adjectives

A whale is louder than a lion. **1**9.18 Canada is bigger than the USA. K2 is more difficult to climb than Mount Everest. My new job is better than my old one. The traffic is always worse in the evening.

 We use comparative adjectives + than to compare two things, people, etc.

adjective	comparative	spelling
old nice	older nicer	one-syllable adjectives: + -er (or -r if the adjective ends in e)
big hot	bigger hotter	adjectives ending one vowel + one consonant: double consonant + -er
dry healthy	drier healthier	one- or two-syllable adjectives ending consonant + y: y- ier
tired	more tired	one-syllable adjectives ending -ed: more + adjective
famous expensive	more famous more expensive	two- or more syllable adjectives: more + adjective
good bad far	better worse further	irregular

9A

a Write a, an, or some + a food or drink word.

	1 Milk	2
3	4	5
6	7	8
some bread		
1	5	
2	6	
3	7	

b Complete the conversation with a, an, so	ie, oi	rany
---	--------	------

Α	What can we coo	ok for your bro	ther and his g	girlfriend?
В	Let's make <u>a</u> piz	za.		
Α	Good idea. Are t	there ¹	toma	toes?
В	Yes. And there a	re ²	mushrod	oms, too.
Α	Great!			
В	Oh no! There isn	′t ³	cheese!	
Α	Oh. Wait a minut	te. I bought ⁴ _		_ steak yesterday
	Are there 5	pot	atoes?	
В	Yes, there are.			
Α	Good. So we car	n have steak ar fruit?	nd chips. Do v	we have
В	I think we have ⁷		_ oranges. Ye	s, and there's
				bananas, too.
Α	OK. You can make	ce ¹⁰	fruit sal	ad for dessert.

9B

a Complete the questions with How much or How many.

How mu	uch sugar do you put in your tea?
1	butter do you use for this cake?
2	cans of Coke did she drink?
3	oil do I need?
4	chocolates were in that box?
5	rice do you want?
6	coffee does he drink?
7	bottles of water did you buy?
88	tins of tuna do we have?
9	orange juice is there in that carton?
0	biscuits did you eat?

b (Circle the correct word or phrase.

B OK. Let's start cooking.

I don't put much / many salt on my food.

- 1 We don't eat a lot of / a lot sweets.
- 2 A How much chocolate do you eat? B A little. / A few.
- 3 My husband doesn't drink much / many coffee.
- 4 A How much fruit did you buy?
 - B Quite a lot. / Quite a lot of.
- 5 We eat a lot of / much fish. We love it!
- 6 A Do your children drink any milk?
 - B No, not much / not many.
- 7 Donna ate her hamburger, but she didn't eat much / many chips.
- 8 A How many vegetables do you eat?
 - B Any. / None. I don't like them.
- 9 I have a cup of tea and a few / a little cereal for breakfast.
- 10 A Do you eat much / many meat?
 - B No, I don't eat no / any meat. I'm a vegetarian.

n 7'
p./

G p.71

9C

a Write the comparative form of the adjectives.

	-	
	big	bigger
1	high	
2	dirty	
3	important	
4	late	
5	low	
6	bored	
7	wet	
8	modern	
9	comfortable	
10	happy	

b Complete with a comparative adjective + than.

	My sister is younger than r	ne. She's only 18. (your	ig)
1	The market is	the supermarke	t for vegetables. (cheap)
2	Italian is	for Spanish people	it is for
	English people. (easy)		
3	I always feel	in the afternoon	in the
	morning. (tired)		
4	This restaurant is	when	it first opened. (busy)
5	Come in the summer. The v (good)	veather is	in the spring.
6	I love science. I find it		nistory. (interesting)
	Milan is		
	I'm		
9	The economic situation is _		it was last year. (bad)
0	Skiing is	I thought it wa	as. (difficult)

10

GRAMMAR BANK

10A superlative adjectives

It's **the oldest** bridge in the world. 10.4 It's **the most popular** shopping street in Europe.

She's **the best** student in the class. Monday is **the worst** day of the week.

- We use the + superlative adjective to say which is the (biggest, etc.) in a group.
- After superlatives, we use in (not of) +
 places, e.g. the longest road in the world,
 the tallest building in New York.

adjective	comparative	superlative	spelling
cold	colder	the coldest	one-syllable adjectives: + -est
high	higher	the highest	
big	bigger	the biggest	adjectives ending one vowel + one consonant: double consonant + -est
hot	hotter	the hottest	
dry	drier	the driest	one- or two-syllable adjectives ending consonant + y: + -iest
sunny	sunnier	the sunniest	
bored	more bored	the most bored	one-syllable adjectives ending -ed:
stressed	more stressed	the most stressed	the most + adjective
dangerous	more dangerous	the most dangerous	two- or more syllable adjectives: the most + adjective
good	better	the best	irregular
bad	worse	the worst	
far	further	the furthest	

10B be going to (plans), future time expressions

I'm going to have a holiday next month.

10.9

I'm not going to study English.

Are you going to fly to Paris?

- We use be going to + verb (infinitive) to talk about future plans.
- We often use future time expressions with going to, e.g. tomorrow, next week, next month, next year, etc.

+			
full form	contraction		
I am You are He / She / It is We are They are	I'm You're He / She / It's We're They're	going to	have a holiday next summer. study English tonight.

full form	contraction					
I am not You are not He / She / It is not We are not They are not	I'm not You aren't He / She / It isn't We aren't They aren't	going to	have a holiday next summer. study English tonight.			

?			✓		X	
Am I Are you Is he / she / it Are we Are they	going to	have a holiday next summer? study English tonight?	Yes,	I am. you are. he / she / it is. we are. they are.	No,	I'm not. you aren't. he / she / it isn't. we aren't. they aren't.

10C be going to (predictions)

 We can use be going to + verb (infinitive) to make predictions (= to say what you think or can see is going to happen in the future).

I think it's going to rain.
You're going to be very happy.
I'm sure they're going to win.



10.20





10A

Write the opposite.

the smallest the biggest 1 the coldest

2 the most expensive 3 the best

4 the most difficult

5 the driest

6 the shortest

7 the nearest

8 the cleanest

Complete the sentences with a superlative adjective.

The tigers are <u>the most dangerous</u> animals in the zoo. (dangerous) 1 Our house is ______ house in the street. (big) 2 For me, Saturday is ______ day of the week. (good) 3 My bedroom is ______ room in our house. (small) 4 Sit here – it's _____ chair in the room. (comfortable) 5 My neighbours upstairs are ______ people in the world. (noisy) 6 My boss is ______ person I know. (stressed) 7 Sophie is ______ student in our English class. (young) 8 _____ building in my town is the castle. (beautiful)

(3 p.78

10B

Complete the sentences with the correct form of be going to and the verb in brackets.

She doesn't have a car. She's going to go by train. (go)

1 We need a holiday. We a hotel near the beach. (book)

2 Tomorrow is Saturday. I in bed until 10.00! (stay)

3 My sister _____ medicine. She wants to be a doctor. (study)

4 Laura and David _____ married soon. (get)

5 Jack's office is very busy at the moment. He

_____late tonight. (work)

6 My son _____ to university – he wants to get a job. (not go)

7 We _____ any museums, because the children think they're boring. (not visit)

Complete the sentences with be going to + a verb.

not buy call not come get have live sleep watch I'm at a friend's house. I'm going to sleep on her sofa. 1 I need to talk to my mum. I _____ her tonight. 2 What _____ we _____ for dinner this evening? 3 My mother isn't feeling very well, so she _____ to the concert with us. 4 There's a lot of snow! How _____ you to work? 5 They love their old car. They _____ a new one. 6 The Force Awakens is on TV tonight. _____ __you



10C

Write predictions for the pictures.

be get have make play send

He's going to play tennis. _____ dinner. 2 _____ a nice day. 3 _____ the bus. _____ an omelette. _____ an email.

Complete the predictions with be going to and a verb.

be buy not finish forget have (x2) not like

10 Venice is a wonderful city. You _____

a great time there.

not pass sleep snow win It's very cold. Do you think it's going to snow? 1 You're driving very fast! We _____ an accident! 2 She isn't a very good student. She _____ the exam. 3 Their new album is great! A lot of people 4 I have a lot of homework. I ______ it tonight. 5 They're playing very well. I think they _____ the match. 6 Look at the time. We _____ late. 7 Oh no, it's a horror film. I'm sure I ______ it. 8 He didn't write down her address. He ______ it. 9 The baby's very tired. She _____ well tonight.

GRAMMAR BANK

11A adverbs (manner and modifiers)

adverbs of manner

- 1 She wants to live independently. Her children always speak politely. She eats very quickly.
- 2 I work hard. We speak English well.
- We use adverbs of manner to say how people do things.
- · Adverbs usually go after the verb or verb phrase. I speak English well. NOT I speak well-English.
- 1 We normally form adverbs by adding -ly to adjectives.
- 2 Some adverbs are irregular. They can be the same as the adjective, e.g. fast, hard, or a different word, e.g. well.

adjective	adverb	spelling
slow quick bad careful	slowly quickly badly carefully	+ -ly
healthy easy	healthily easily	consonant + y: y + -ily
possible	possibly	le → -ly
good fast hard	well fast hard	irregular

 Remember the difference between adjectives and adverbs. I'm a careful driver. (careful is an adjective. It describes the noun, driver.) I drive carefully. (carefully is an adverb. It describes the verb, drive.)

very, quite, really, etc.

It isn't very expensive. 11.2 The exams are quite difficult. She drives incredibly fast. They speak really slowly.

- We use the adverbs very, quite, etc. to modify adjectives or other adverbs.
- They always go <u>before</u> the adjective or adverb.

Words ending in -ly

Be careful. Some words that end in -ly aren't adverbs, e.g. friendly (= adjective).

He's a friendly person.

11B verb + to + infinitive

- 1 I want to travel for six months. 11.6 She decided to go to Australia. You need to practise every day. When did you learn to play the guitar?
- 2 Would you like to go to Africa? I wouldn't like to be famous.

would like and like

I'd like to dance. = I want to dance. *I like dancing.* = I enjoy it; I like it in general.

- 1 Many verbs are often followed by another verb in the infinitive with to. These include want, need, learn, promise, decide, plan, choose, try, remember, forget, and hope.
- 2 I would like to = I want to (now or in the future). would like is also followed by to + infinitive.
- Contractions: 'd = would, wouldn't = would not.
- We can also use Would you like...? to offer, e.g. Would you like a drink?
- would like is the same for all persons.

11C definite article

1 the

11.12

Can you close the window, please? Can you check their address on the internet? It's the best restaurant I know.

2 no article

Men are usually more interested in sport than women. She's my mother's cousin. That's Tom's chair! What time did you have breakfast? Jim goes to school by bus. Karen's studying physics at university.



a/an or the?

We often use a the first time we mention a person or thing. The next time we use the because it is now clear what we are talking about, e.g. Let's have **a** pizza. **The** pizzas are very good here.

- 1 We use the:
- · when it is clear what we are talking about, e.g. Close the window. = the window that is open.
- · when there is only one of something, e.g. the internet, the sun,
- before superlative adjectives, e.g. the biggest, the best, etc.
- 2 We don't usually use the:
- when we talk about people or things in general. Men are more interested in sport than women. (general) BUT The women in this class work harder than the men. (specific)
- before possessive 's. She's my mother's cousin. **NOT** She's the my mother's cousin.
- with:

meals: have breakfast, lunch, dinner, etc.

by + transport: go by car, travel by train, etc.

general places: work, school, university, bed, home.

digi ZABAN

11A

a Adjective or adverb? Circle the correct form.

People drive quite dangerous / dangerously

- 1 He wrote down her email careful / carefully.
- 2 My neighbour's children aren't very polite / politely.
- 3 My niece plays the piano beautiful / beautifully.
- 4 Fast food is very unhealthy / unhealthily.
- 5 Old people often walk very slow / slowly.
- 6 I bought a real / really cheap bag in the sales.
- 7 My friend sings very good / well.
- 8 My sister speaks Spanish perfect / perfectly.
- 9 We wear casual / casually clothes to work.
- 10 The view from the top is incredible / incredibly beautiful.

b Complete the sentences with adverbs from these adjectives.

ba	ad	careful	easy	fast	good	hard	healthy	perfect	quiet
	Th	e trains i	n Swed	den ru	n perfe	ctly_e	ven when	it snows.	
1	Са	n you ta	lk		, p	lease?	I'm trying	to sleep.	
2	Do	n't drive			wh	en it's	raining.		
3	Id	on't like	being	in the	sea bed	cause I	can't swir	m	
	vei	ry							
4	Sh	e sat dov	wn		_ beca	use the	chair onl	ly had thre	ee legs
5	We	e're work	ing		be	ecause	we need	to finish t	he job.
6	Pro	ofessiona	al sport	s peo	ole usua	ally eat	very		
7	We	e played			in t	ne sem	i-final and	d we lost !	5–1.
8	Sh	e was the	e best	stude	nt in the	class	and she p	assed the	9
	exa	am							
									07

(-) p.87

11**B**

a Complete the sentences with to + a verb from the list.

	e buy call climb drive	get married go	
na	ave leave see stay		
	Sam loves Africa. He wants	to climb Mount Kilimanjaro.	
1	I learned	a car when I was 17.	
2	Our fridge is broken. We no	eed a new	one.
		famous. I'm happy as I	
4	He promised	his girlfriend when he g	got home
5	The weather was terrible. W	/e decided	at home
6	The boss would like	you in his office.	
7	They're planning	They're looking for	a venue.
8	I hope	time to see the sights when I'	m in
	Moscow next week.		
9	Would you like	on a safari?	
0	I'm really enjoying the part	y. I don't want	

b (Circle the correct form.

I hate fly / flying so I usually travel by train.

- 1 Would you like to have / have dinner with me tonight?
- 2 My grandmother learned to speak / speaking Spanish when she was 60!
- 3 I'd like to travel / travelling around Europe.
- 4 I like relax / relaxing at the weekend.
- 5 Do you want to play / playing football?
- 6 He's hoping to get / getting the results of his test next week.
- 7 Most people hate to go / going to the dentist.
- 8 I love to read / reading detective stories.
- 9 It's cold. You need to wear / wearing a coat.
- 10 My mum doesn't mind to cook / cooking.

n	89
١.	٠,

11C

a Circle the correct word or phrase.

How much time do you spend on internet / the internet?

- 1 My brother is at university / at the university studying maths.
- 2 I love travelling by train / by the train.
- 3 We're going to visit my aunt at weekend / at the weekend.
- 4 Let's stay at home / at the home tonight. I don't want to go out.
- 5 I love reading novels / the novels.
- 6 Yolanda is best / the best student in our class.
- 7 I love clear nights when you can see moon / the moon.
- 8 That's the man / a man I told you about yesterday.
- 9 Can you open a door / the door for me, please?
- 10 He had breakfast / the breakfast late this morning.

b Complete with the or -.

_	omprote with the or .
	It's the longest river in <u>the</u> world.
1	What time do you finish work?
2	I don't like people who talk loudly in the cinema.
3	children behaved very badly yesterday.
4	Lorena doesn't like dogs.
5	Where do you usually have lunch during the week?
6	sun came out so we went for a walk.
7	Can you pass salt, please?
8	My brother chose most expensive ice cream.
9	Last year we went on holiday by car.
10	Is James in office today? He wasn't in yesterday.

12A present perfect

1 A Have you seen the new Matt Damon film?
B Yes, I have.

12.2

She hasn't read any books in English.

- 2 Have you ever read a Russian novel?
 I've never worked in an office.
- 3 Have you finished the exercise?
 Your parents have arrived. They're in the living room.
- 1 We use the present perfect when we talk or ask about events in the past, but when we don't say or ask when.
- 2 We often use the present perfect with ever (= at any time in your life) and never (= at no time in your life).
- 3 We also use the present perfect to talk about recent events, e.g. I've finished my homework.

+		
full form of have	contraction	past participle of main verb
I have You have He / She / It has We have They have	I've You've He / She / It's We've They've	seen that film.

full form of have			contraction	past participle of main verb
I / You / We / The He / She / It has I			haven't hasn't	seen that film.
?		V]	X
Have I / you / we / they Has he / she / it	seen that	th Ye	es, I / you / we / ey have. es, he / she / has.	No, I / you / we / they haven't. No, he / she / it hasn't.

- To make the present perfect we use have / has + the past participle of the verb.
- 's = has in present perfect.

infinitive	past simple	past participle
like	liked	liked
want	wanted	wanted

 Past participles of regular verbs are the same as the past simple.

infinitive	past simple	past participle
read /rixd/	read /red/	read /red/
see	saw	seen

 Past participles of irregular verbs are sometimes the same as the past simple, e.g. read /red/ but sometimes different, e.g. seen.

Look at the list of irregular past participles on p.165.

12B present perfect or past simple?

- A Have you been to that new Italian restaurant?
- 12.8

- B Yes, I have.
- A When did you go there?
- B I went last weekend.
- A Who did you go with?
- **B** I went with some people from work.
- We often use the present perfect to ask / tell somebody about a past action for the first time. We don't ask / say when the action happened.
 - Have you been to that new Italian restaurant?
- Then we use the past simple to ask / talk about the details.
 'When did you go there?' 'I went last weekend.'
- We use the past simple NOT the present perfect with when and past time expressions, e.g. yesterday, last week.
 When did you see the film? NOT When have you seen the film?

I saw it last week. NOT I've seen it last week.

been or gone?

A Have you ever been to Italy?

- 12.9
- B Yes, I've been to Rome three times.
- A My sister has gone to Italy to study Italian.
- been and gone have different meanings. been is the past participle of be, and gone is the past participle of go.
- In the present perfect we use been to (NOT gone to OR been in) to say that somebody has visited a place.
 I've been to Rome three times.
 - Have you **been to** the new Italian restaurant in George Street?
- We use *gone to* when somebody goes to a place and is still there.
 - My parents have **gone to** the USA for their holidays. They're having a fantastic time.
- Compare:

Nick has **been to** Paris. = He visited Paris and came back at some time in the past.

Nick has **gone to** Paris. = He went to Paris and he is in Paris now.

digi ZABAN

12A

С			ntence in t cture. Use			
	ask 2	clean	not finish	1		
	4			5		
	1 _ 2 _ 3 _ 4 _			h	nis driv	ood film ring test er book the wall uestion
		ask 2 4 1 _ 2 _ 3 _ 4 _ 4	ask clean A He's clea 1 2 3 4	ask clean not finish A property of the floating of the floati	ask clean not finish paint	#e's cleaned the floor. 1

Circle the correct form.

(Have you ever seen) Did you ever see a Japanese film?

- 1 I haven't finished / didn't finish this book. I'm on page 210.
- 2 My boyfriend has given / gave me a ring for my last birthday.
- 3 They've bought / bought a new house last month.
- 4 Have you ever danced / Did you ever dance a tango?
- 5 My friends have gone / went to a party last weekend.

Circle the correct verb, been or gone.

Let's go to the Peking Duck. I've never been / gone there.

- 1 The secretary isn't here. She's been / gone out for lunch.
- 2 I've never been / gone to the USA.
- 3 My neighbours aren't at home. They've been / gone on holiday.
- 4 Have you ever been / gone to China?
- 5 We have lots of food. I've been / gone to the supermarket.

C	Put the verbs in brackets in the present pe	rfect
	or past simple.	

Α	Have you ever	been to S	pain? (be)
В	No, but I <u>went</u>	to Po	ortugal last year. (go)
Α	1 yo	ou ever	any countries
	outside Europe		
В	Yes, I have. I 2_		to New York a few years
	ago. (go)		
Α	³ Who	you	with? (go)
			k trip and his company
	4 fc	or everythin	ıg. (pay)
^	11 1 6 11	5	.1 (1 0/1)
А	How wonderful!		you there for long? (be)
В	No, we ⁶	only	there for five days. (be)
B A	No, we ⁶	only you _	
B A	No, we ⁶	only you _ a suite ir	there for five days. (be) ? (stay)
B A B	No, we ⁶ ⁷ Where We ⁸ beautiful! (have)	only you _ a suite in	there for five days. (be)? (stay) n a five-star hotel. It was
B A B	No, we ⁶ ⁷ Where We ⁸ beautiful! (have)	only you _ a suite in	there for five days. (be)? (stay) n a five-star hotel. It was y you on any
B A B	No, we 67Where We 8	only you a suite in ne company ntly? (invite)	there for five days. (be)? (stay) n a five-star hotel. It was y you on any
B A B	No, we 67Where We 8	only you you you a suite in ne company ntly? (invite) and 10	there for five days. (be)? (stay) n a five-star hotel. It was y you on any) working there a

Days and numbers

VOCABULARY BANK

1 DAYS OF THE WEEK

a Complete the days of the week with the letters.

iday /ˈfraɪdeɪ/
aturday /'sætədeɪ/
unday /'sʌndeɪ/

- b 1.11 Listen and check.
- c 1.12 Listen and repeat the bold phrases.

the weekend (= Saturday and Sunday)
a weekday (= Monday-Friday)
What day is it today? It's Friday.
Have a good weekend. You too.
See you later. See you tomorrow. See you on Monday.

ACTIVATION Cover the days. Say them in order.

Capital letters

Days of the week begin with a capital letter. Tuesday **NOT** tuesday

2 NUMBERS 0-20

a Match the words and numbers.

	twelve <u>twen</u> ty e <u>le</u> ven three eigh <u>teen</u> five fif <u>teen</u> <u>se</u> ven					
0	zero /'zıərə	U/				
1	one /wʌn/		11	/r'levn/		
2	two /tuː/		12	/twelv/		
3	three	/Oriz/	13	thirteen /dartim/		
4	four /fɔː/		14	fourteen /fortim/		
5		/faɪv/	15	/,frf'ti:n/		
6	six /siks/		16	sixteen /sikstim/		
7		/'sevn/	17	seven <u>teen</u> /sevn'ti:n/		
8	eight /eɪt/		18	/eɪ'tiːn/		
9	nine /naɪn/		19	nine <u>teen</u> /nam'ti:n/		
10	ten /ten/		20	/'twenti/		

b 1.13 Listen and check.

ACTIVATION Cover the words. Say the numbers.

Phone numbers

794 1938 = seven nine four, one nine three eight $44 = \text{four four } \mathbf{OR} \text{ double four } 0 = \text{zero } \mathbf{OR} \text{ oh } / \mathbf{au} / \mathbf{OC}$

3 NUMBERS 21-100

Write the numbers.

21	twenty-one /twenti wan/	
	thirty /ˈθɜːti/	
	thirty-five /θαιτί 'faɪv/	
	forty /'foxti/	
	forty-three /ˌfɔːti 'θriː/	
	fifty /'fɪfti/	
	fifty-nine /fifti 'naın/	
	<u>six</u> ty /'sɪksti/	
	sixty-seven /siksti sevn/	
	seventy /'sevnti/	
	seventy-two /sevnti 'tuː/	
	eighty /'eɪti/	
	eighty-eight /eiti 'eit/	
	ninety /'naınti/	
	ninety-four /nainti 'for/	
	a <u>hun</u> dred /ə 'hʌndrəd/	

b 1.27 Listen and check.

Pronunciation

13 and 30, 14 and 40, etc. are similar, but the stress is different, e.g. thir teen, thir ty, four teen, for ty, etc.

-een is a long sound, but -y is a short sound.

ACTIVATION Cover the words. Say the numbers.

9 p.9

1,000

4 HIGH NUMBERS

Write the missing numbers or words.

105	a hundred and five	9/(0)
350	two hundred three hundred and	
875	eight hundred	seventy-five
1,000	a <u>thou</u> sand /ˈθaʊznd/	
	one thousand five hun	dred
2,012	two thousand and	
5,420	five thousand four	and twenty
	twenty-five thousand	
100,000	a hundred	
1,000,000	a million /'mɪljən/	
2,300,000	two million	hundred thousand

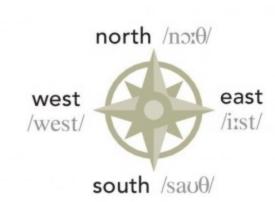
b **19.14** Listen and check.

ACTIVATION Cover the words. Say the numbers.

Countries

VOCABULARY BANK

1 CONTINENTS





a Match the words and continents 1-6.

Continent		Adjective
	Africa /ˈæfrɪkə/	African / æfrikən
	Asia /'eɪʒə/	Asian /'eɪʒn/
	Au <u>stra</u> lia /pˈstreɪlɪə/	Au <u>stra</u> lian /p'streɪliən/
	Europe /ˈjʊərəp/	Euro <u>pe</u> an /jʊərəˈpiːən/
1	North A <u>me</u> rica /nɔːθ əˈmerɪkə/	North A <u>me</u> rican /nɔːθ əˈmerɪkən/
	South A <u>me</u> rica /saυθ ə'merɪkə/	South A <u>me</u> rican /saυθ ə'merɪkən/

- **b 1.18** Listen and check.
- c Cover the words and look at the map. Can you remember the continents and their adjectives?

Capital letters

Use CAPITAL letters for continents, countries, nationalities, and languages, e.g. Spanish **NOT** spanish.

The United Kingdom

The United Kingdom (the U<u>K</u>
/ðə juː ˈkeɪ/)= England, Scotland, Wales, and Northern Ireland. The nationality adjective is *British*.

2 COUNTRIES AND NATIONALITIES

a 1.19 Match the countries and flags. Then listen and check.



b Cover the words and look at the flags. Can you remember the countries and nationalities?

ACTIVATION Choose six countries. Say the continent.

(Spain is in Europe.



Classroom language

VOCABULARY BANK

a Match the phrases and pictures.

The teacher says

- Open your books, please.
- Go to page 84.
- Do exercise a.
- Read the text.
- 1 Look at the board.
- Close the door.
- Work in pairs (or groups).
- Answer the questions.
- Listen and repeat.
- Stand up.
- Sit down.
- Turn off your phone.
- Please stop talking!
- b 1.33 Listen and check.



Use *please* at the beginning or end of a phrase to be polite.

Please come here. **OR** Come here, please.

c Match the phrases and pictures.

You say

- Sorry, can you repeat that, please?
- 14 Sorry I'm late.
- I don't understand.
- Can I have a copy, please?
- How do you spell it?
- I don't know.
- How do you say gato in English?
- Can you help me, please?
- What page is it?
- d 1.34 Listen and check.
- e Cover the sentences and questions and look at the pictures. Say the sentences and questions.

ACTIVATION Try to use the **You say** language in your next English lesson.











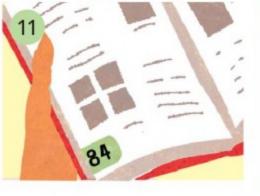




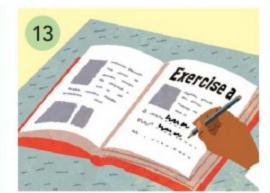










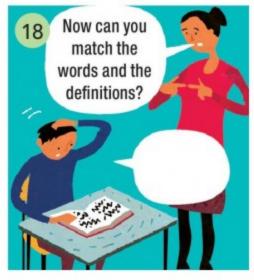




















Things

VOCABULARY BANK

a Match the words and photos.

- a bag /bæg/
- a <u>charg</u>er /'tʃɑːdʒə/
- 1 a coin /kɔɪn/
- a <u>cre</u>dit card /'kredit kard/ (or debit card)
- a <u>di</u>ary /ˈdaɪəri/
- a <u>dic</u>tionary /ˈdɪkʃənri/
- a file /faɪl/
- glasses /ˈglɑːsɪz/
- headphones /'hedfəunz/
- an identity card /ar'dentati kard/
- a key /kiː/
- a lamp /læmp/
- a laptop /ˈlæptɒp/
- a maga<u>zine</u> /mægəˈziːn/
- a <u>news</u>paper /ˈnjuːzpeɪpə/
- a <u>note</u>book /'nəutbuk/
- a pen /pen/
- a pencil /'pensl/
- a (mobile) phone /fəun/
- a photo /ˈfəutəu/
- a piece of paper /piss əv 'perpə/
- a purse /pass/
- scissors /'sɪzəz/
- sunglasses /'sʌnglaɪsɪz/
- a tablet /'tæblət/
- a <u>ti</u>cket /'tɪkɪt/
- a <u>ti</u>ssue /'tɪʃuː/
- an umbrella /Am'brelə/
- a wallet /'wplit/
- a watch /wptʃ/

b **12.1** Listen and check.

Plural nouns

Some words for things are always plural, e.g. glasses, headphones, scissors. Don't use a / an with plural nouns. **NOT** a glasses, a headphones.

ACTIVATION Cover the words and look at the photos. In pairs, ask and answer.

What is it?) (It's a watch.

What are they?) (They're glasses.

















Adjectives

VOCABULARY BANK

- a Match the words and pictures.
 - <u>beau</u>tiful /'bjuːtɪfl/ <u>ug</u>ly /'ʌgli/
 - big /big/ small /smɔːl/
 - cheap /tʃiːp/ expensive /ɪk'spensɪv/
 - clean /kliːn/ <u>dir</u>ty /ˈdɜːti/
 - easy /ˈiːzi/ difficult /ˈdɪfɪkəlt/
 - fast /faɪst/ slow /sləʊ/
 full /fʊl/ empty /ˈempti/
 - | full /ful/ | empty /empti |
 | good /gud/ | bad /bæd/ |
 | high /hai/ | low /ləu/ |
 - hot /hpt/ cold /kəuld/
 light /laɪt/ dark /daɪk/
 long /lpŋ/ short /ʃɔɪt/
 old /əuld/ new /njuɪ/
 - old /əʊld/ young /jʌŋ/
 rich /rɪtʃ/ poor /pɔː/
 right /raɪt/ left /left/
 right /raɪt/ wrong /rɒŋ/
 - safe /seif/ dangerous /'deindzərəs/
 the same /seim/ different /'difrənt/
 - strong /stron/ weak /wisk/
 tall /tosl/ short /fost/
- b **12.7** Listen and check.
- Test your partner. A say an adjective and
 B say the opposite.
 - Modifiers: very / really, quite
 We often use modifiers before
 adjectives.
 A Ferrari is very / really fast.
 It's quite cold today. (= It's cold,
 but not very cold.)

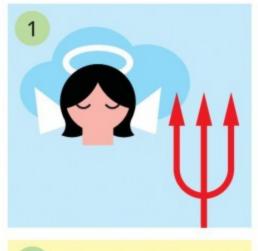
ACTIVATION Look at the things in the list. Say two adjectives for each one. Use modifiers.

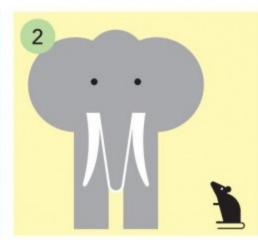
a Ferrari Mount Everest Bill Gates the *Mona Lisa* the Pyramids Africa your town or city

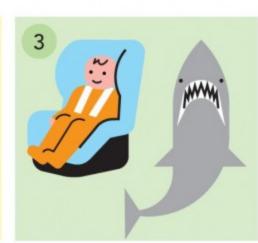
a Ferrari (It's really fast and very expensive.

Opinion adjectives
good: nice /nais/, great /greit/,
fantastic /fæn'tæstik/

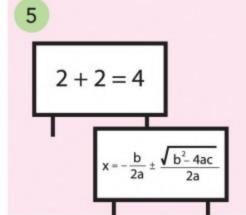
bad: <u>aw</u>ful /'ɔːfl/, <u>te</u>rrible /'terəbl/

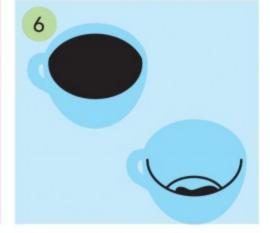


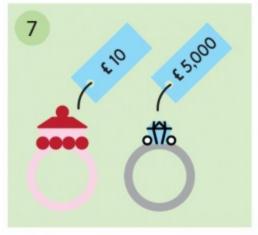


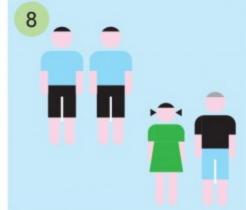


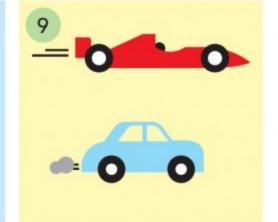






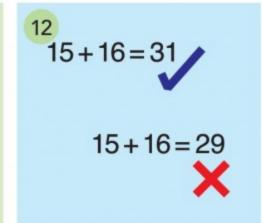


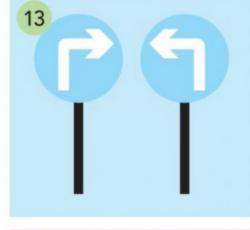


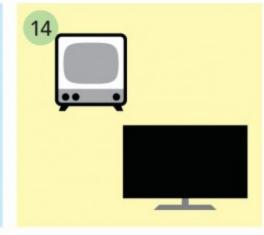








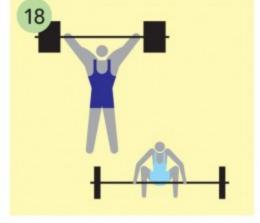




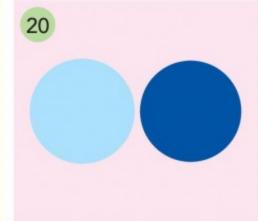


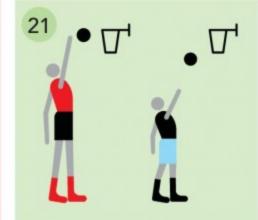












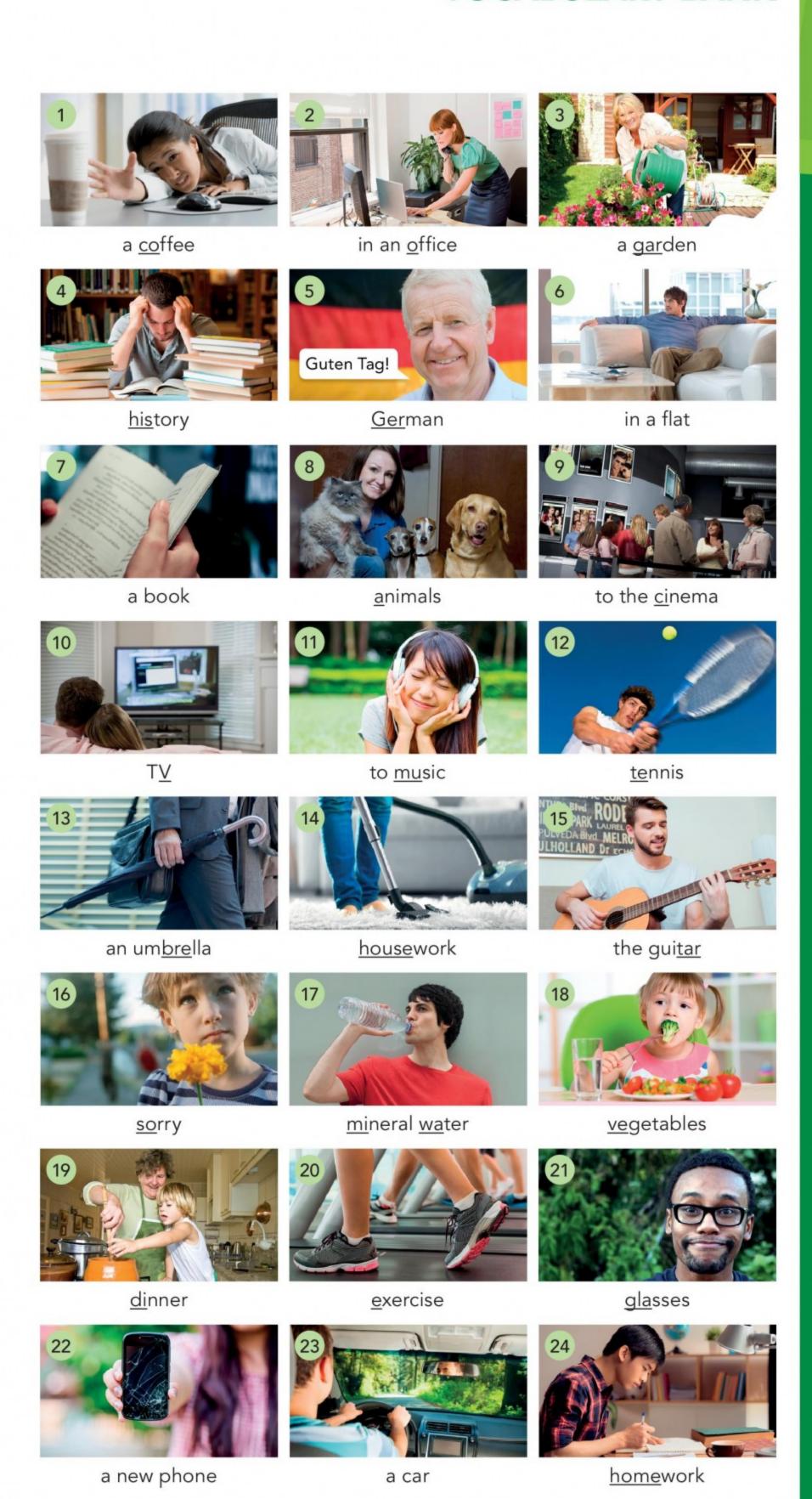
Verb phrases

VOCABULARY BANK

- a Match the verbs and photos.
 - cook /kuk/
 - do /duː/
 - drink /driŋk/
 - drive /draw/
 - eat /ixt/
 - go /gəʊ/
 - have /hæv/
 - like /laɪk/
 - listen /'lɪsn/
 - live /liv/
 - need /nixd/
 - play /pleɪ/
 - read /rixd/
 - say /seɪ/
 - speak /spi:k/
 - study /'stʌdi/
 - take /teik/
 - 1 want /wont/
 - watch /wptʃ/
 - wear /weə/
 - work /waik/
- b 3.2 Listen and check.

ACTIVATION Cover the verbs and look at the photos. Test yourself or a partner.

G p.22



Jobs

VOCABULARY BANK

Match the words and photos.

- an accountant /əˈkauntənt/
- an actor /'æktə/
- an administrator /əd'mınıstreitə/
- an architect /ˈɑːkɪtekt/
- a builder /'bildə/
- a chef /fef/ (or cook)
- a cleaner /'klimə/
- a dentist /'dentist/
- a doctor /'dpktə/
- an engineer /endʒɪ'nɪə/
- a factory worker /'fæktəri waxkə/
- a flight attendant / flast atendant /
- a footballer /'futboxla/
- a guide /gaɪd/
- a hairdresser /headresa/
- a journalist /'dʒɜɪnəlɪst/
- a lawyer /'loxjə/
- a (bank) manager /'mænidʒə/
- a model /'modl/
- a mu<u>si</u>cian /mjuˈzɪʃn/
- a nurse /nais/
- a pilot /'parlət/
- a police officer /pəˈliːs ɒfɪsə/ (or po<u>lice</u>man, po<u>lice</u>woman)
- a receptionist /rɪˈsepʃənɪst/
- a shop assistant /'fop assistant/ (or sales assistant)
- a <u>sol</u>dier /ˈsəʊldʒə/
- a taxi driver /'tæksi draɪvə/
- a teacher /'tixtsə/
- a vet /vet/
- a waiter /'weitə// a waitress /'weitrəs/

a / an + jobs

We use a / an + job words. She's a model. NOT She's model.

- 3.10 Listen and check.
- 3.11 Listen and repeat the sentences. What do you do?

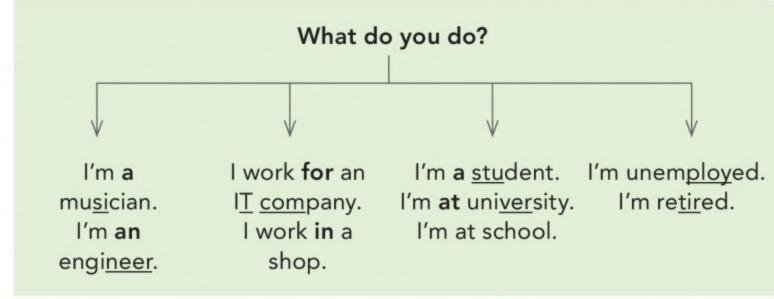
ACTIVATION Cover the jobs and look at the photos. In pairs, say what the people do.

She's a journalist. He's an engineer.





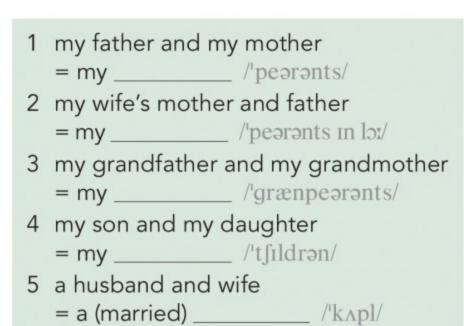


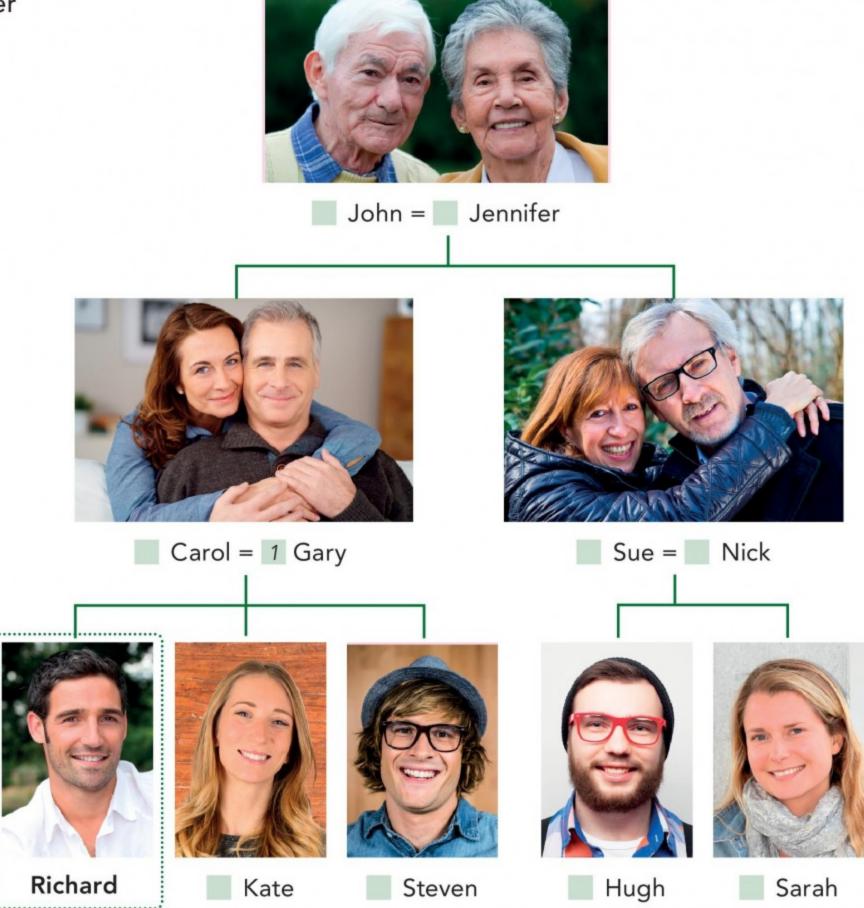


The family

VOCABULARY BANK

- a Look at the two family trees. Number the people in relation to Richard.
 - 1 father /'faxðə/
 - 2 mother /'mʌðə/
 - 3 brother /'braðə/
 - 4 sister /'sistə/
 - 5 daughter /'doxtə/
 - 6 son /sAn/
 - 7 grandfather /ˈgrænfaːðə/
 - 8 grandmother /ˈgrænmʌðə/
 - 9 aunt /aint/
 - 10 uncle /'Ankl/
 - 11 <u>ne</u>phew /'nefjur/
 - 12 niece /niss/
 - 13 cousin /'kazn/
 - 14 wife /warf/
- **b** Complete 1–5 with <u>chil</u>dren, <u>couple</u>, <u>grandparents</u>, <u>parents</u>, or <u>parents-in-law</u>.





c **1.3** Listen and check your answers to **a** and **b**.

More family words

my wife's mother = my <u>mother-in-law</u>
my husband's sister = my <u>sis</u>ter-in-law
my mother's new husband = my
<u>step</u>father
my father's new wife = my <u>step</u>mother
the person I am in a relationship with
= my <u>part</u>ner

ACTIVATION Cover the words. In pairs, ask and answer.

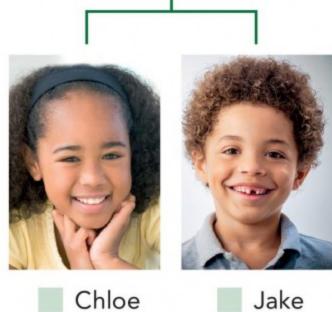
Who's Jennifer?

(She's Richard's grandmother.

Who are Sue and Nick?)

(They're Richard's aunt and uncle.









Ruby Oliver

Daily routine

VOCABULARY BANK

a Match the verb phrases and pictures.

Busy Belinda

- have a shower
- have a <u>co</u>ffee
- do the <u>house</u>work
- start work at 8.30
- finish work at 6.30
- get dressed
- 1 wake up at 7.00
- have lunch at work
- go <u>sho</u>pping
- go to bed
- have <u>pi</u>zza for <u>di</u>nner
- get home late
- go to work by bus
- put on <u>make</u>-up
- check <u>e</u>mails
- get to work

Chilled Charlie

- go to I<u>tal</u>ian <u>cla</u>sses
- 17 get up at 8.00
- have <u>break</u>fast
- have a shave
- go home <u>ear</u>ly
- walk to work
- re<u>lax</u>
- take the dog for a walk
- sleep for eight hours
- make dinner
- have a bath
- see friends
- **b 4.8** Look at the pictures. Listen and check.

O have

- 1 For family and possessions, e.g. I have three children. He has a big house.
- 2 For activities, e.g. I have lunch at 1.30. She has a shower in the morning.
- 3 For food and drink, e.g. have a coffee, have a sandwich.

ACTIVATION Cover the verb phrases. **A** describe Belinda's day. Then **B** describe Charlie's day.

Busy Belinda



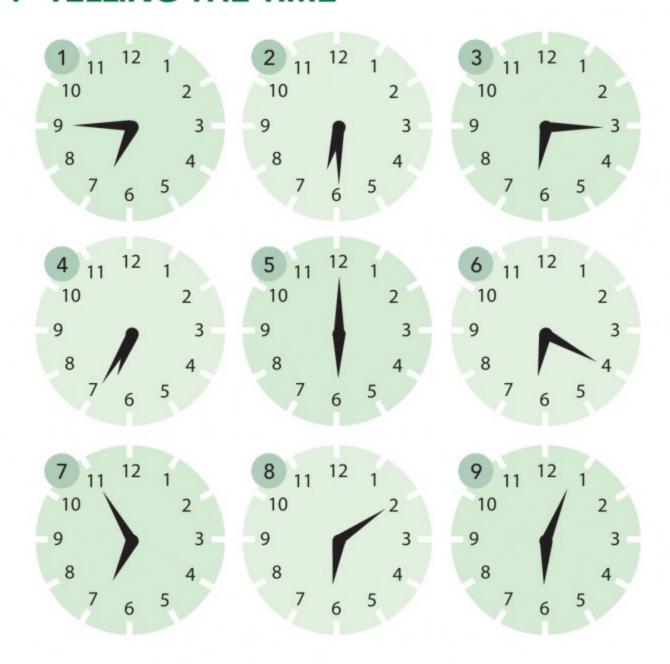
Chilled Charlie



Time

VOCABULARY BANK

TELLING THE TIME



- Match the clocks and phrases.
 - It's (a) quarter past six.
 - It's six o'clock.
 - 1 It's (a) quarter to <u>se</u>ven.
 - It's ten past six.
 - It's five to seven.
 - It's twenty-five to seven.
 - It's half past six.
 - It's three minutes past six.
 - It's twenty past six.
- 3.26 Listen and check.

☐ Time

You can ask for the time in two ways: What time is it? **OR** What's the time?

For times which are not multiples of five, we use minutes, e.g. 6.03 = It's three minutes past six.

When you can't be exact, use about:

'What time do you get up?'

'At about 7.00.'

ACTIVATION Cover the phrases and look at the clocks. Ask and answer with a partner.

What time is it? / What's the time? (It's...

G p.28

EXPRESSIONS OF FREQUENCY

Complete the expressions.

How often do you see your friends?

1	every /'evri/ day	M, T, W, Th, F, S, S
2	every w	week 1, week 2, week 3, etc.
3	every m	January, February, March,
		etc.
4	every y	e.g. 2017, 2018, 2019, etc.
5	once /wʌns/ a	e.g. only on Mondays
6	twice /twars/ a	e.g. on Mondays and
		Wednesdays
7	three times a	e.g. on Mondays,
		Wednesdays, and Fridays
8	four times a	e.g. in January, April, July,
		and October

b 4.17 Listen and check.

ACTIVATION Cover the left-hand column. Test yourself.

ADVERBS OF FREQUENCY

- What do the highlighted words mean? Match sentences 1-6 to a-f.
 - 1 b I always /'ɔ:lweɪz/ get up at 7.00 during the week.
 - 2 I often /'pfn/ go to the cinema after work.
 - 3 | I usually /'jurguəli/ finish work at 6.00.
 - 4 I sometimes /'samtaimz/ meet a friend for lunch.
 - 5 I hardly ever /ha:dli 'evə/ go to the theatre.
 - 6 I never /'nevə/ have coffee.
 - a About seven or eight times a month.
 - b I start work at 8.00 every day.
 - c But on Fridays we stop at 3.00.
 - d I don't like it.
 - e Only once or twice a year.
 - f About once or twice a month.
- 4.18 Listen and check.
- **10** 4.19 Listen and repeat the highlighted adverbs of frequency.



Normally /'normali/ is the same as usually. I normally get up early. = I usually get up early.

ACTIVATION Cover sentences 1–6 and look at a–f. Can you remember the sentences?



More verb phrases

VOCABULARY BANK

a Match the verbs and photos.

- buy /baɪ/
- call /kɔːl/ (or phone)
- 1 dance /dams/
- draw /droz/
- find /faind/
- forget /fəˈget/
- give /gɪv/
- hear /hɪə/
- help /help/
- leave /li:v/
- look for /luk for/
- meet /mixt/
- paint /peint/
- re<u>mem</u>ber /rɪˈmembə/
- run /rʌn/
- see /siː/
- send /send/
- sing /sɪŋ/
- swim /swim/
- take /teik/
- talk /to:k/
- tell /tel/
- try /traɪ/
- use /juiz/
- wait for /weit for/

b **5.1** Listen and check.

ACTIVATION Cover the verbs and look at the photos. Test yourself or a partner.





3

a taxi

a newspaper







in the sea

to do something difficult

your bag on a train







a parking space

somebody's name

somebody's name







somebody a secret

somebody flowers

to a friend







a song

a noise

a photo







somebody

the internet

a text message







your keys

a friend

a picture









a bus

a race

a picture a film

The weather and dates

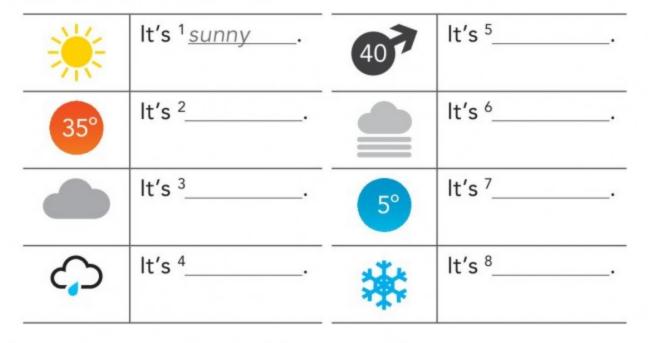
VOCABULARY BANK

THE WEATHER

Complete the chart with words from the list.

cloudy /'klaudi/ cold /kəuld/ foggy /'fpgi/ hot /hpt/ raining /'reinin/ snowing /'snoun/ sunny /'sʌni/ windy /'wɪndi/

What's the weather like?



◆ 5.17 Listen and check.

Other adjectives for weather

warm /worm/ = not very hot (opp. cool) wet = raining (opp. dry)

Nouns and adjectives

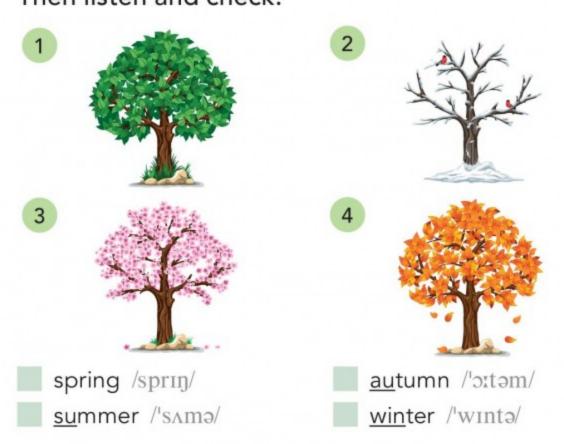
Noun: sun, cloud, wind, fog

Adjective: sunny, cloudy, windy, foggy

Cover the sentences in the chart and look at the pictures. Ask and answer with a partner.

What's the weather like?) (It's sunny.

5.18 Match the seasons and pictures. Then listen and check.



ACTIVATION What's the weather like where you are? What season is it?

ORDINAL NUMBERS AND THE DATE

Complete the numbers and words.

1st	first /fasst/		
2nd	second /'sekənd/		
3rd	third /03xd/		
4th	fourth /fɔː0/		
5th	fifth /fɪfθ/		
6th	/sɪksθ/		
7th	/'sevnθ/		
	eighth /eɪtθ/		
	ninth /naɪnθ/		
10th	/tenθ/		
11th	/r'levnθ/		
	twelfth /twelfθ/		
13th	/θar'tirnθ/		
14th	/fɔr'ti:nθ/		
	twentieth /'twentiet/		
21st	/twenti 'fa:st/		
	twenty-second /twenti 'sekand/		
23rd	/twenti 'θ3:d/		
	twenty-fourth /twenti 'fɔːθ/		
30th	\θeit:εθ'\		
	thirty-first /\thetastti 'fasst/		

- 106.10 Listen and check.
- Look at how we write and say the date.

Writing and saying the date

We write We say

22nd March the twenty-second of March

the twelfth **of** January

! In the USA, they write the month first, e.g.

12/1 = the first of December.

Prepositions with months and dates

Use in + months, e.g. My birthday's in February. Use on + dates, e.g. The meeting is on Friday 5th September.

Saying years

1807 eighteen oh seven 1936 nineteen thirty-six 2008 two thousand and eight

(for years 2000-2010)

2011 two thousand and eleven **OR** twenty eleven

ACTIVATION What's the date today? What's the date tomorrow?

go, have, get

VOCABULARY BANK

a Match the verb phrases and photos.

go

- by bus /bas/ (or by car /kaː/, by plane /pleɪn/)
- 1 for a walk /work/
- home (from school) /həum/
- out (on Friday night) /aut/
- shopping /ˈʃɒpɪŋ/
- to a restaurant /'restront/
- to bed (late) /bed/
- to church /tʃɜːtʃ/ (or to mosque /mɒsk/, etc.)
- to the beach /bixts/
- back (to work) /bæk/
- on holiday /'hplədeɪ/

have

- a car /kgz/ (or a bike /baɪk/)
- long hair /lɒŋ heə/
- breakfast /'brekfəst/ (or lunch /lʌntʃ/, dinner /'dɪnə/)
- a drink /drɪŋk/
- a good time /god taɪm/
- a sandwich /'sænwidʒ/
- a <u>show</u>er /ˈʃaʊə/ (or a bath /bɑːθ/, a swim /swɪm/)

get

- a <u>newspaper /'njurzperpə/</u> (= buy or obtain)
- a <u>ta</u>xi /'tæksi/ (= take)
- an email /'irmerl/ (= receive)
- dressed /drest/
- home /həum/ (= arrive)
- to the <u>airport</u> /'eaport/ (= arrive)
- up /ʌp/ (early, late)
- b **17.16** Listen and check.
- c Cover the verb phrases and look at the photos. Test yourself or a partner.

ACTIVATION Take turns to say five things you did yesterday and five things you did last week with went, had, or got.

Yesterday, I got up early. I had breakfast in a café. I went shopping...

p.59

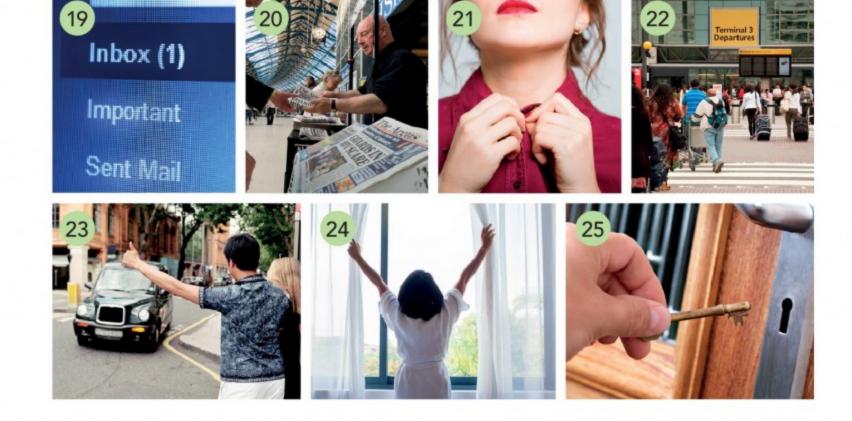
go



have

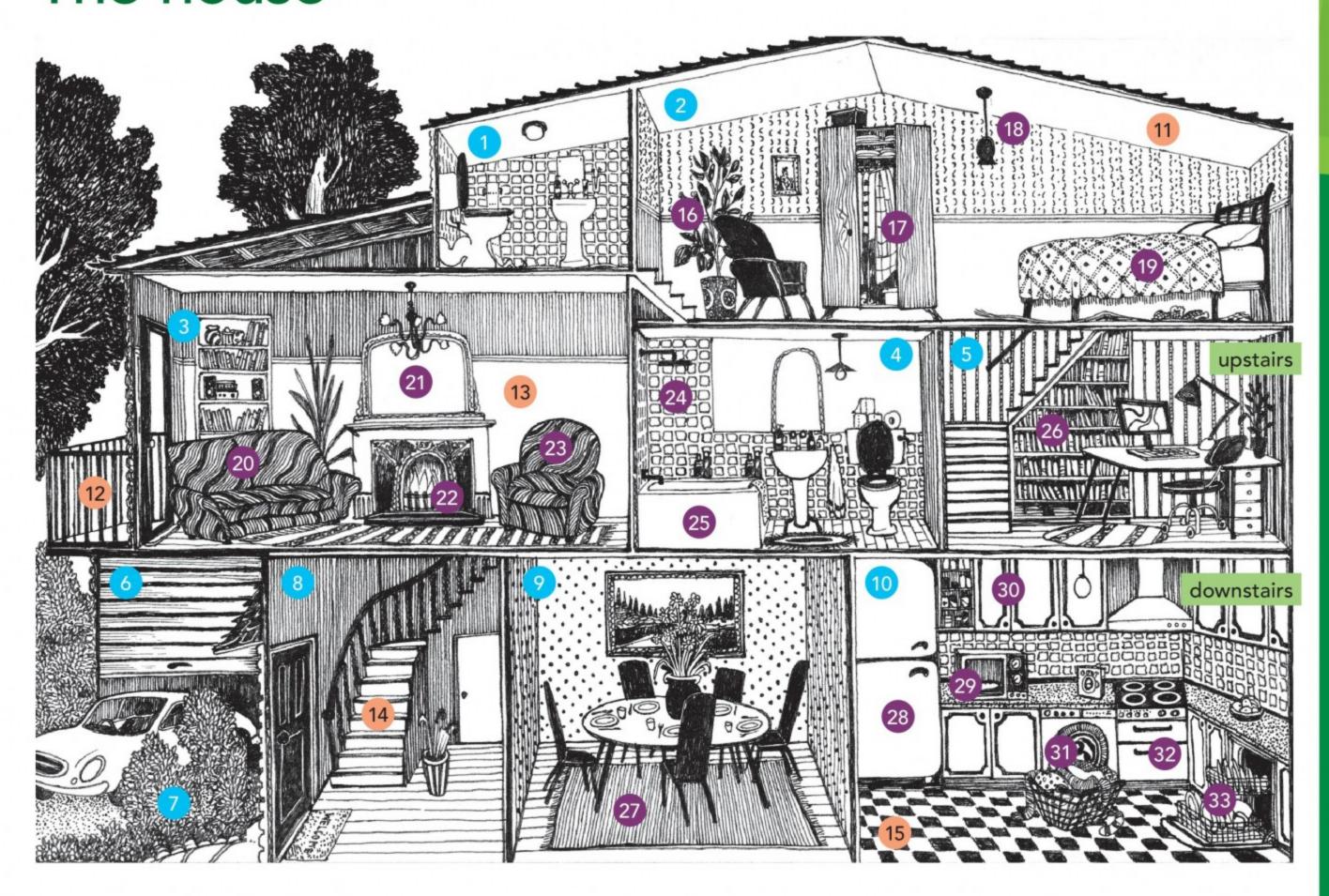


get



The house

VOCABULARY BANK



1 ROOMS

Match the words and pictures 1–10.

- a <u>bath</u>room /ˈbɑːθruːm/
- a bedroom /'bedrum/
- a <u>di</u>ning room /ˈdaɪnɪŋ ruːm/
- a garage /ˈgæraɪʒ/ /ˈgæraɪdʒ/
- a garden /ˈgɑːdn/
- a hall /hɔːl/
- a <u>ki</u>tchen /'kɪtʃɪn/
- a <u>li</u>ving room /'lɪvɪŋ ruɪm/
- a study /'stʌdi/
- 1 a toilet /'toilet/

2 PARTS OF A HOUSE

Match the words and pictures 11–15.

- a <u>bal</u>cony /'bælkəni/
- a <u>cei</u>ling /ˈsiːlɪŋ/
- a floor /flox/
- stairs /steəz/
- a wall /wɔːl/

3 THINGS IN A ROOM

- a Match the words and pictures 16-33.
 - an <u>arm</u>chair /ˈɑːmtʃeə/
 - a bath /bα:θ/
 - a bed /bed/
 - a carpet /'karpit/
 - a cooker /'kukə/
 - a cupboard /'knbəd/
 - a <u>dish</u>washer /'dɪʃwɒʃə/
 - a <u>fire</u>place /ˈfaɪəpleɪs/
 - a fridge /fridz/

- a light /laɪt/
- a microwave /'maikrəweiv/
- a <u>mi</u>rror /'mɪrə/
- a plant /plaint/
- a shelf (shelves) /felf/
- a shower /ˈʃaʊə/
- a <u>so</u>fa /'səufə/
- a wardrobe /'wordroub/
- a <u>wa</u>shing ma<u>chine</u> /ˈwɒʃɪŋ məʃiːn/
- b **38.10** Listen and check 1−3.

Central heating and air conditioning

<u>Central heating</u> is a system that makes a house warm. Air con<u>ditioning</u> is a system that makes a house cool.

ACTIVATION Cover the words and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

Prepositions

VOCABULARY BANK

PLACE

- Match the words and pictures.
 - in /In/ (the wardrobe)
 - in front of /m frant pv/ (the table)
 - on /pn/ (the chair)
 - under /'Andə/ (the bed)
 - behind /bi'haind/ (the sofa)
 - between /bi'twirn/ (the windows)
 - opposite /'ppəsit/ (the woman)
 - next to /nekst tuz/ (the armchair)
 - over /'auva/ (the mirror)
- ■8.22 Listen and check.

ACTIVATION In pairs, point and ask and answer about the pictures.

Where's the ghost?) (He's under the bed.

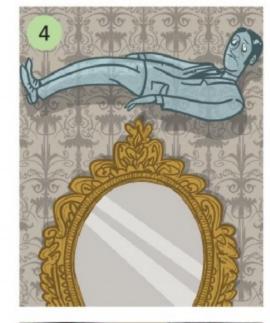
above and below

above /əˈbʌv/ is similar to over. below /bɪˈləʊ/ is similar to under.

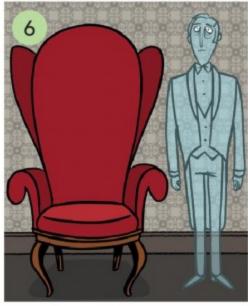


















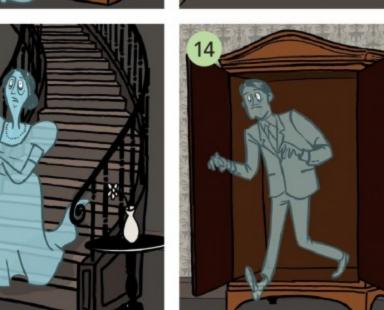
MOVEMENT

- Match the words and pictures.
 - from /from/ (the bedroom) to /tuː/ (the bathroom)
 - into /'Intu/ (the wardrobe)
 - out of /aut av/ (the wardrobe)
 - through /θruz/ (the window)
 - up /Ap/ (the stairs)
 - down /daun/ (the stairs)
- 38.23 Listen and check.

ACTIVATION In pairs, point and ask and answer about the pictures.

> Where's the ghost going?) (He's going up the stairs.









Food and drink

VOCABULARY BANK

a Match the words and photos.







Breakfast/brekfast/

- bread /bred/
- butter /'bʌtə/
- cereal /'sɪəriəl/
- 1 cheese /tʃiːz/
- coffee /'kpfi/
- eggs /egz/
- jam /dʒæm/
 (orange) juice /dʒuɪs/
- milk /mɪlk/
- sugar /ˈʃʊgə/
- tea /tiː/
 - toast /təust/

Lunch /lants/ or dinner /'dinə/

- fish /fɪʃ/ e.g. salmon, tuna
- herbs /haːbz/
- meat /mixt/ e.g. <u>chi</u>cken, <u>sau</u>sages, steak, ham
- /lɪc/ lio (avil<u>o</u>)
- pasta /'pæstə/
- rice /rais/
- salad /'sæləd/
- seafood /'sixfuxd/
 spices /'sparsiz/

Vegetables

/'ved3təblz/

- <u>ca</u>rrots /'kærəts/
- chips /tʃɪps/ (or French fries)
 - a <u>le</u>ttuce /'letis/
- mushrooms /'maʃrumz/
- onions /'ʌnjənz/
- peas /pizz/
- peppers /'pepəz/
- po<u>ta</u>toes /pəˈteɪtəuz/
- to<u>ma</u>toes /təˈmɑːtəuz/

Fruit /fruxt/

- apples /'æplz/
- ba<u>na</u>nas /bəˈnɑːnəz/
- oranges /'prindziz/
- a <u>pine</u>apple /'pamæpl/
- strawberries /'strarbariz/

Desserts

/di'zarts/

- cake /keɪk/
- fruit salad /fruit 'sælad/
- ice <u>cream</u> /aɪs 'kriːm/

Snacks

/snæks/

- biscuits /'biskits/
- chocolate /'tʃɒklət/
- crisps /krɪsps/
- nuts /nats/
- a <u>sand</u>wich /'sænwɪdʒ/
- sweets /swirts/

b **19.1** Listen and check.

ACTIVATION Cover the words and look at the photos. Test yourself or a partner.

Places and buildings

VOCABULARY BANK

- a Match the words and photos.
 - a <u>che</u>mist's /'kemɪsts/ (or <u>phar</u>macy /'fɑːməsi/)
 - a church /tʃɜɪtʃ/
 - a department store /dɪˈpɑːtmənt stɔː/
 - a hospital /hpspitl/
 - a market /'markit/
 - a park /park/
 - a police station /pəˈliːs steɪʃn/
 - a post office /'paust ofis/
 - a shopping centre /'sppin senta/
 - a <u>su</u>permarket /'suːpəmɑːkɪt/
 - 1 a town hall /taun horl/
 - an art gallery /ˈɑːt gæləri/
 - a castle /'kgrsl/
 - a mu<u>se</u>um /mjuˈziːəm/
 - a <u>the</u>atre /ˈθɪətə/
 - a zoo /zuː/
 - a bridge /bridʒ/
 - a <u>ri</u>ver /ˈrɪvə/
 - a road /rəud/
 - a square /skweə/
 - a street /strixt/
 - a bus station /'bas steifn/
 - a car park /ˈkɑː pɑːk/
 - a <u>rail</u>way <u>sta</u>tion /'reɪlweɪ 'steɪʃn/
 - Other places of worship (= religious buildings)
 - a cathedral /kə'θiːdrəl/
 - a mosque /mpsk/
 - a synagogue /'sinəgog/
 - a temple /'templ/
- b 10.2 Listen and check.
- c Cover the words and look at the photos. Test yourself or a partner.

ACTIVATION Ask and answer about places with a partner.

Is there a _____ near where you live / near this school?







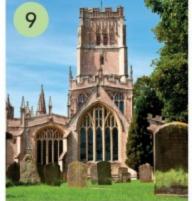










































Irregular verbs

Present	Past simple	Past participle
be /biː/	was /wpz/ were /w3:/	
become /bɪˈkʌm/	became /bɪˈkeɪm/	become
begin /bɪˈgɪn/	began /bɪˈgæn/	begun /bɪˈgʌn/
break /breik/	broke /brauk/	broken /'brəukən/
bring /brin/	brought /broxt/	brought
build /bɪld/	built /bɪlt/	built
buy /baɪ/	bought /boxt/	bought
can /kæn/	could /kod/	_
catch /kætʃ/	caught /kɔːt/	caught
come /kʌm/	came /keim/	come
cost /kpst/	cost	cost
do /duː/	did /dɪd/	done /dʌn/
drink /driŋk/	drank /drænk/	drunk /draŋk/
drive /draw/	drove /drəuv/	driven /'drɪvn/
eat /irt/	ate /eɪt/ (or /et/)	eaten /ˈiːtn/
fall /fɔːl/	fell /fel/	fallen /ˈfɔːlən/
feel /fixl/	felt /felt/	felt
find /faind/	found /faund/	found
fly /flaɪ/	flew /flux/	flown /floun/
forget /fəˈget/	forgot /fəˈgɒt/	forgotten /fəˈgɒtn/
get /get/	got /gpt/	got
give /gɪv/	gave /geɪv/	given /ˈgɪvn/
go /gəu/	went /went/	gone /gpn/
have /hæv/	had /hæd/	had
hear /hɪə/	heard /hard/	heard
know /nəu/	knew /njuː/	known /nəun/

Present	Past simple	Past participle
leave /lixv/	left /left/	left
lose /luːz/	lost /lost/	lost
make /meɪk/	made /meɪd/	made
meet /mixt/	met /met/	met
pay /peɪ/	paid /peɪd/	paid
put /put/	put	put
read /rixd/	read /red/	read /red/
run /rʌn/	ran /ræn/	run
say /seɪ/	said /sed/	said
see /siː/	saw /sɔː/	seen /sim/
send /send/	sent /sent/	sent
sing /sɪŋ/	sang /sæŋ/	sung /sʌŋ/
sit /sɪt/	sat /sæt/	sat
sleep /slirp/	slept /slept/	slept
speak /spirk/	spoke /spauk/	spoken /ˈspəukən/
spend /spend/	spent /spent/	spent
stand /stænd/	stood /stud/	stood
swim /swim/	swam /swæm/	swum /swam/
teach /tixtʃ/	taught /toxt/	taught
take /teik/	took /tok/	taken /'teɪkən/
tell /tel/	told /təʊld/	told
think /θιŋk/	thought /0ort/	thought
understand /ʌndəˈstænd/	understood /ʌndəˈstʊd/	understood
wake /weik/	woke /wəuk/	woken /ˈwəʊkən/
wear /weə/	wore /wɔː/	worn /wɔːn/
win /wɪn/	won /wʌn/	won

Vowel sounds

SOUND BANK

	usual spelling		! but also
fish	fil	s this m six g swim	English women busy
tree	ea ea	eet three at speak e we	people police key niece
cat	bl	anks flat ack Japan ave tablet	
car	a fa	arger party art ther glasses ance	aunt
clock	CC	ot stop offee long ot box	what watch want
horse	al ta	oort door lk small w draw	water four bought thought
bull	00 g	ll put ood book ok cook	could would woman
boot	u* Ju	hool food ine blue ew flew	do fruit juice shoe
computer	Many d /a/ is alv teacher second		
bird	ir fir	er verb est third urse turn	learn work world word
egg	te	es help n pet ery red	friend weather breakfast any said
up	ug	us lunch gly run cky cut	come brother son does young

	usual spelling	! but also		
train	a* name make ai rain paint ay play day	break steak great eight they grey		
phone	o* old home close don't oa road toast	slow low		
bike	i* nine twicey my whyigh high night	buy		
owl	ou out thousand cloudy count ow how down			
boy	oi coin noise toilet oy unemployed enjoy			
ear	eer beer engineer ere here we're ear dear hear	really idea		
chair	air airport stairs pair hair are square careful	their there wear		
tourist	Not a very common sound. euro Europe plural sure			
/i/	A sound between /I/ and /iI/. Consonant + y at the end of words is pronounced /i/. happy angry thirsty			
/u/	Not a very common sound. education usually situation			

 $[\]star$ especially before consonant + e

Consonant sounds

SOUND BANK

	usual spelling	! but also	
parrot	p pilot Polandpaper sleeppp apple happy		
bag	be builder table number jobbb hobby		
key	 c credit card actor k kitchen like ck black back 	Christmas school	
girl	g green get argue big gg eggs bigger		
flower	f Friday fifteen wife ph photo alphabet ff office coffee		
vase	v very eleven live travel river love	of	
tie tie	t tea take student sit tt letter bottle	liked dressed	
dog	d dance understand bad read dd address middle	played tired	
snake	s sister stops ss stress actress ce/ci centre nice city cinema		
zebra	z zero zoo Brazil s,se music please dogs watches		
shower	sh shopping shoes Spanish fish ti (+ vowel) station information	sugar sure	
television	si (+ on) revision decision occasion	usually garage	

	usual spelling	! but also
thumb	th think thirty theatre bathroom fourth tenth	
mother	th the these then that other with	
chess	ch cheap children church tch watch match t (+ ure) picture adventure	
jazz	j January jacketJuly enjoydge bridge fridge	German manager
leg	I,le like little plane girl II small spelling	
right	r rice rich problem try rr sorry terrible	write wrong
witch	w window wait Wednesday twenty wh why when	one once
yacht	y yellow yesterday young yes before u use university music student	
monkey	m man Monday money swim mm summer swimming	
nose	n no never nine ran nn dinner thinner	know
singer	ng England language song thing long going	think bank
house	h happy hungry hotel hall head behind	who whose

voiced

unvoiced



OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford, 0x2 6DP, United Kingdom

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide. Oxford is a registered trade mark of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2019

The moral rights of the author have been asserted e-Book Edition

ISBN: 978 0 19 403161 5

ISBN: 978 0 19 403163 9 IN APP

First published in 2019

No copying or file sharing

This digital publication is protected by international copyright laws. No part of this digital publication may be reproduced, modified, adapted, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, to any other person or company without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not modify, adapt, copy, store, transfer or circulate the contents of this publication under any other branding or as part of any other product. You may not print out material for any commercial purpose or resale

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only. Oxford University Press disclaims all and any responsibility for the content of such websites

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors would like to thank all the teachers and students round the world whose feedback has helped us to shape English File.

The authors would also like to thank: all those at Oxford University Press (both in Oxford and around the world) and the design team who have contributed their skills and ideas to producing this course.

Finally very special thanks from Clive to Maria Angeles, Lucia, and Eric, and from Christina to Cristina, for all their support and encouragement. Christina would also like to thank her children Joaquin, Marco, and Krysia for their constant inspiration.

The publisher and authors would also like to thank the following for their invaluable feedback on the materials: Jane Hudson, Brian Brennan, Isabel Orgillés Trol, Beatriz Martin, Philip Drury, Rachael Smith, Robert Anderson, Maria Vanessa Ferroni, Freia Layfield, Cristina Cogollos, Lesley Poulaud, Magdalena Muszyńska Dagmara Łata, Marcin Zaród, Sandy Millin, Sylwia Kossakowska-Pisarek, Pavlína Zoss, Ruth Valentová, Elif Barbaros, Hamide Cakir, Zahra Bilides, Polina Kuharenko, Ellen Van Raemdonck, Eva Misky, Gyula Kiss, Marisa Lobato, Wagner Roberto Silva dos Santos, Thalysor Nobrega, Sarah Giles, Biagio Iaquinta, Amory Lee Ewerdt, Roberto Sanchez, Wayne Rimmer, Mowbray Bates, Aideen Lyons Murphy, Ola Skolimowska, Karla Mikešová, Marta Zanzi

The Publisher and Authors are very grateful to the following who have provided information, personal stories, and/or photographs: Marjan Jahangiri and Darius Latham-Koenig for 'Busy lives' p.32/33; Charlotte Campbell, p.51 (interview); Joaquin Cogollos for the story 'It's written in the cards' p.82/83; Jack Horton, p.87 (interview); Sir Ian McKellen, p.98/99 (interview); Cristina Cogollos, p.114 ('My Favourite Day')

The authors and publisher are grateful to those who have given permission to reproduce the following extracts and adaptations of copyright material: p.23 Adapted extract from 'What foreigners who live here really think of the British way of life' by James Gillespie. http://www.express.co.uk/news/uk/425830/What-foreignerswho-live-here-really-think-of-the-British-way-of-life. Daily Express Online/N&S Syndication. Reproduced by permission. p.24 Adapted extract from 'Shift work: Learning to love our offbeat schedules' by Jessica E Hall, from Offbeat Home & Life (http://offbeathome.com). Reproduced by permission of the publisher and the author. p.30 Adapted extract from 'Doug Pitt: Not easy to know but 'the guy who will step in" by Steve Pokin, November 8 2014, www.news-leader.com. Reproduced by permission of Springfield News-Leader/USA TODAY Network. p.32 Extract from 'How I make it work: Marjan Jahangiri' by Ruby Warrington, 3 July 2011, www.thesundaytimes.co.uk. Reproduced by permission of News Syndication. p.37 Extract from 'A Life in the Day: the superstar DJ David Guetta' by Danny Stott, 24 May 2015, www.thesundaytimes.co.uk. Reproduced by permission of News Syndication. p.53 Adapted extract from 'Perfect wake up songs: science determines top.20 songs to help you get up in the morning', November 4 2015, from http://www.hngn.com. Reproduced by permission of Headlines and Global News. p.56 Adapted extract from 'West Midlands couple book bargain Caribbean flights - from Birmingham, Alabama' by Adam Withnall from www.independent.co.uk, 13 January 2014. Reproduced by permission. p.58 Extract from 'Celebrating New Year's Eve in Reykjavik' by Jennifer Dombrowski. © 2016 Jennifer Dombrowski, Luxe Adventure Traveler. All rights reserved. p.59 Adapted Extract from 'New Year's Eve 2011 - NYE Gig Story'. Reproduced by permission of The Disco Studio. The Disco Studio is a retailer of DJ Equipment and related accessories. p.59 Adapted extract from 'New Year' Eve on Copacabana is awesome!' by Marcelo Souza, January 18 2015, www.traveltranquilo.com/new-years-eve/. Reproduced by permission of Marcelo Souza de Araujo. p.69 Adapted extract from 'How the Modern Detective Novel Was Born' by Martin Edwards, May 29 2015, www.publishersweekly.com/ pw/by-topic. Republished by permission of Publisher's Weekly, permission conveyed through Copyright Clearance Center, Inc. p.70 Adapted extract from 'Why I Eat The Same Thing Every Single Day' by Nathan Wiebe, www.

mindbodygreen.com, 20 June 2015. Copyright mindbodygreen LLC. Reproduced by permission. p.79 Adapted extract from 'She Learns to Cross Streets in Ho Chi Minh City, Vietnam' by Evelyn Hannon, www.journeywoman.com. Reproduced by permission of the author. p.80 Adapted extract from '5:1, Continent Run Summarised' by Gunnar Garfors, www.garfors.com, 20 June 2012. Reproduced by permission of the author. p.81 Adapted extract from http:// www.responsibletravel.com/copy/planning-a-trip-but-dont-know-where-to-start. Reproduced by permission of www.responsibletravel.com. p.88 Definition of 'Bucket List' from www.oxfordlearnersdictionaries.com/definition/english. Reproduced by permission of Oxford University Press. p.88 Adapted extract from 'About me' by Stefka Poessel, https://foodandphotosrtw.com. Reproduced by permission of the author. p.88 Adapted extract from '101 Bucket List Ideas for 2015 you can do (almost) everywhere' by Stefka Poessel, https:// foodandphotosrtw.com. Reproduced by permission of the author. p.91 Adapted extract from 'Remember life before the internet?' By Marie-Claire Dorking, from http://www.marieclaire.co.uk/blogs/548460/remember-life-before-theinternet.html. Reproduced by permission of Time Inc UK. p.116 Adapted extract from 'Lovely & relaxing, close to center, Budapest, Hungary' from www.airbnb. co.uk/rooms/. Reproduced by permission of Zoltán Kerenyi-Kiss.

Sources: www.cosmopolitan.com/food-cocktails/; www.dailymail.co.uk;

www.tripadvisor.co.uk; www.nydailynews.com; www.hostelworld.com; www.theguardian.com; http://thoughtcatalog.com/michael-koh The publisher would like to thank the following for their kind permission to reproduce photographs: 123RF pp.39 (pens and pencils/belchonock), 155 (smiling man/ Wavebreak Media Ltd); Alamy Stock Photo pp.9 (Spanish football fans/John Fryer), 22 (Notting Hill carnival/LondonPhotos), 22 (woman in garden/Micheko Productions, Inh. Michele Vitucci), 24 (Vancouver police squad patrol car vehicle downtown BC Canada/Radharc Images), 30 (Doug Pitt/epa european pressphoto agency b.v.), 30 (Gyllenhaal siblings/Allstar Picture Library), 35 (festival, Greece/ Peter Eastland), 35 (elderly Okinawan woman/Chris Willson), 35 (fruit shop/age fotostock), 42 (heavy snow/Don Tonge), 42 (London marathon/Avpics), 43 (treetop walkway/Charles Bowman), 48 (Sad snowman on field/Johner Images), 51 (headphones/Jiri Hera), 62 (businessman/Image Source), 63 (Bateman's house/parkerphotography), 63 (elderly lady/ClassicStock), 64 (Bateman's house/Tony Watson), 66 (The Langham Hotel/Scott Hortop Travel), 71 (Thanksgiving dinner/foodfolio), 72 (penne pasta/ASP Food), 72 (apple juice/ Mediablitzimages), 72 (pineapple chunks/ScotStock), 72 (honey/Paul Airs), 72 (dark chocolate/gbimages), 72 (sparkling water/Ian Dagnall), 75 (pub/John Morrison), 78 (Oxford street, London/Jack Sullivan), 78 (Ponte Fabricio bridge) Bailey-Cooper Photography 4), 85 (Hôtel Lagunita, Mexico/Hemis), 86 (giant burger/Zoonar GmbH), 86 (Brooklyn Bridge/Washington Imaging), 91 (teletext/ Sam Toren), 91 (cassette player/Frankie Angel), 91 (Yellow pages/Jamie Mann), 91 (London map/David J. Green), 94 (Jurassic Park cover/sjbooks), 96 (friends at cafe/Ammentorp Photography), 98 (Ian McKellen, Gandalf/AF archive), 99 (Ian McKellen, X-Men/AF archive), 106 (Langham Hotel/Nick Moore), 115 (Arsenal Emirates Stadium/Ivan Strba), 115 (unicycle performer/Alex Segre), 115 (London boat tour/Justin Kase z07z), 117 (cottage/incamerastock), 151 (train tickets/ Nathaniel Noir), 151 (folder/Richard Heyes), 151 (wallet/L A Heusinkveld), 151 (tissue paper/PhotoAlto sas), 151 (paper/Geoffrey Kidd), 153 (man relaxing/ UpperCut Images), 154 (receptionist/Ace Stock Ltd), 154 (nurse/Monty Rakusen), 154 (TV reporter/dmac), 154 (police officer/Janine Wiedel Photolibrary), 154 (taxi driver/fStop Images GmbH), 154 (tour guide speaker/T.M.O.Pictures), 154 (Charlie Adam/Ahmad Faizal Yahya), 154 (shaking hands/Wavebreak Media ltd), 154 (cellist player/redsnapper), 158 (man singing/Image Source), 158 (drawing/Shepic), 160 (boy on stairs/Image Source), 160 (boy eating breakfast/Image Source), 160 (news vendor/Roger Bamber), 160 (terminal 3, Heathrow/Kumar Sriskandan), 164 (pharmacy sign/graficart.net), 164 (Chipping Norton Town Hall/Les. Ladbury), 164 (Hyde Park/Pawel Libera Images), 164 (beauty department/Robert Stainforth), 164 (market/Homer Sykes), 164 (hospital/Justin Kase z12z), 164 (post office/Realimage), 164 (church/ incamerastock), 164 (police station/Justin Kase ztwoz), 164 (theatre/Kirsty McLaren), 164 (New York City, MoMA/Patrick Batchelder), 164 (Dalyan River/ Dorling Kindersley ltd), 164 (Itchen toll bridge/Motoring Picture Library), 164 (bus station/Peter Titmuss), 164 (car park/Jonathan Howell Photography); Bridgeman Art Library Ltd p.54 (Van Gough painting/Fogg Art Museum, Harvard Art Museums, USA/Bequest from the Collection of Maurice Wertheim, Class 1906); Caters News Agency Ltd p.85 (underground hotel room/Caters News Agency); Children and The Arts p.55 (Adele for Face of Britain/Children and The Arts); Christina Latham-Koenig pp.31 (Tom/Christina Latham-Koenig), 31 (Celia and children/Christina Latham-Koenig), 31 (Miriam and family/Christina Latham-Koenig), 32 (Marjan Jahangiri operating/Christina Latham-Koenig), 33 (Darius Latham-Koenig/Christina Latham-Koenig), 71 (lettuce/Christina Latham-Koenig), 87 (Jack Horton/Christina Latham-Koenig); Erlebniswelt Muotathal GmbH p.85 (Hüttenhotel Husky-Lodge/erlebniswelt muotathal GmbH/www.erlebniswelt.ch); Getty Images pp.9 (Australian tennis fan/ Marianna Massey), 9 (Switzerland football fans/Matthew Ashton), 11 (Snoop Dogg/Prince Williams), 11 (Shakira/Paul Archuleta), 14 (Virginia Woolf/Hulton Archive), 14 (male portrait/Robbie Jack - Corbis), 21 (Coney Island/Andy Ryan), 30 (celebrity couple/Josiah Kamau), 30 (Morgan Freeman and son/Jeff Vespa), 30 (Mary-Kate Olsen and Olivier Sarkozy/James Devaney), 34 (girl using laptop) Alicia Frost), 34 (girl using computer/Teresa Lett), 35 (builder portrait/Gianluca Colla), 37 (DJ performing/Gabriel Olsen), 42 (outdoor theatre/VisitBritain/Eric Nathan), 43 (fashion exhibition/Anthony Harvey), 50 (piano player/Lawrence Manning), 53 (jumping on bed/LWA/Dann Tardif), 55 (Kurt Vonnegut portrait/ Ron Galella), 55 (Billy Dee Williams/ABC Photo Archives), 55 (Adele portrait/ Dave Hogan), 58 (fireworks display/Giulio Bisio Photo), 59 (firework display/ Samba Photo), 63 (female portrait/H. Armstrong Roberts), 63 (business portrait/ Verity Jane Smith), 63 (retro secretary/Alija), 71 (Shakshuka/Alena Gamm/ EyeEm), 73 (scale/jonathansloane), 87 (food market/DreamPictures/Shannon Faulk), 102 (female portrait/Peeter Viisimaa), 102 (male portrait/Nicolas McComber), 102 (male portrait/Andriy Onufriyenko), 102 (female portrait/by Dornveek Markkstyrn), 102 (rooftop portrait/Oliver Rossi), 102 (Daniel Craig/ Jason LaVeris), 102 (Jay-Z/Todd Plitt), 102 (Cate Blanchett/Samir Hussein), 102 (Helen Mirren/Gary Gershoff), 102 (Leonardo DiCaprio/Todd Plitt), 102 (Alecia Moore/Gregg DeGuire), 102 (Nicolas Cage/Nomi Ellenson), 102 (Dakota Johnson/Karwai Tang), 153 (reaching for coffee/Jose Luis Pelaez Inc), 153 (businesswoman/Image Source), 153 (cat and dogs/Malcolm MacGregor), 153 (tennis player/David J Spurdens/Digital Vision), 153 (businesspeople/Chris Ryan), 153 (child with flower/Cheyenne Montgomery), 153 (man drinking water/ Westend61), 153 (cooking with grandma/Karina Mansfield), 153 (young man/ Fyza Hashim), 154 (architect/Tetra Images), 154 (dentist/Benelux/Corbis/VCG), 154 (construction worker/Rick Gomez), 154 (army soldier/Gravity Images), 154 (haircut/Frank Gaglione), 154 (teacher/Getty Images), 154 (dentist/Benelux/ Corbis/VCG), 154 (builder/Rick Gomez), 154 (engineer/Andrew Brookes), 154 (catwalk/Stefan Gosatti), 154 (doctor/T.T.), 154 (pilot/AAGAMIA), 154 (actor rehearsing/Dougal Waters), 155 (young boy/KidStock), 158 (happy man/Fancy/ Veer/Corbis), 158 (thoughtful man/Fancy/Veer/Corbis), 158 (man searching/Fuse), 158 (whispering/Fuse), 158 (unattended backpack/Orchidpoet), 158 (helping/ Tara Moore), 158 (woman hugging/Image Source RF/DreamPictures), 158 (painter/Marc Romanelli), 158 (queuing in fancy dress/JW LTD), 160 (couple reading menu/OMG), 160 (beach relaxation/M Swiet Productions); Guardian News & Media Ltd p.14 (Virginia Woolf writers room/Guardian News & Media Ltd 2016/Eamonn McCabe); Guardian News & MediaGuardian News & Media Ltd p.14 (Ian Rankin writers room/Guardian News & Media Ltd 2016/Eamonn McCabe); Gunnar Garfors p.80 (Gunnar Garfors); HarperCollins Publishers Ltd p.94 (Game of Thrones book cover reprinted by permission of HarperCollins Publishers Ltd © (2011) (George RR Martin) Hodder & Stoughton Ltd. p.94 (IT book cover reprinted by permission of Hodder & Stoughton @ (2011) (Stephen King); Indiana Museum p.55 (Kurt Vonnegut/From the collection of the Indiana State Museum and Historic Sites); Leonie Morse p.32 (Marjan Jahangiri/Leonie Morse); Nathan Weibe p.70 (Nathan Weibe); News Syndication p.56 (Adam Armstrong and girlfriend India/News Syndication/Jim Clarke (The Sun,05 June 2015)); Oxford University Press pp.8 (Czech Republic flag/EyeWire), 15 (biro pen/ Dennis Kitchen Studio, Inc), 15 (wallet/Peter Viney), 16 (American flag/

Photodisc), 71 (chicken salad/Sarah Bench), 72 (water bottle/Mark Mason), 78 (the river Nile/erichon), 114 (student/fancy), 149 (Scottish flag/Oxford University Press), 149 (English flag/Oxford University Press), 149 (Irish flag/ Oxford University Press), 149 (Spanish flag/Graphi-Ogre), 149 (Poland flag/ Graphi-Ogre), 149 (Turkish flag/Graphi-Ogre), 149 (Mexican flag/Graphi-Ogre), 149 (American flag/Graphi-Ogre), 149 (German flag/Graphi-Ogre), 149 (Brazilian flag/Graphi-Ogre), 149 (Hungarian flag/Graphi-Ogre), 149 (Egypt flag/Graphi-Ogre), 149 (Italian flag/Graphi-Ogre), 149 (Argentina flag/Graphi-Ogre), 149 (Russian flag/Graphi-Ogre), 149 (Japanese flag/Graphi-Ogre), 149 (China flag/ Graphi-Ogre), 149 (French flag/Graphi-Ogre), 149 (Swiss flag/Graphi-Ogre), 149 (Czech Republic flag/Graphi-Ogre), 153 (German man/Image Source), 153 (movie ticket queue/image100), 153 (couple watching television/Corbis), 154 (chef/Photolibrary), 154 (car production line/Monty Rakusen), 154 (barrister/ Ocean), 154 (waiter/Corbis), 154 (airline stewardess/image 100), 158 (listening/ Image Source), 160 (travel friends/Ann Haritonenko), 160 (man showering/Di Studio), 160 (hailing a taxi/Image Source), 164 (country highway/Digital Vision), 164 (supermarket shopping/Photographers Choice), 164 (dinosaur exhibit/ BananaStock); Responsible Travel p.81 (Justin Francis/Responsible Travel founder/www.responsibletravel.com); Rex Shutterstock pp.16 (the White House/ REX/Shutterstock), 30 (female celebrities/Henry Lamb/Photowire/BEImages/BEI), 99 (Macbeth performance/REX/Shutterstock); SCALA Group SPA p.55 (Billy Dee Williams Self-Portrait 1993/National Portrait Gallery/Smithsonian Institution/ Art Resource 2016/SCALA, Florence); Shutterstock pp.8 (3D earth illustration/ Mmaxer), 8 (Chinese flag/hxdbzxy), 8 (French flag/connel), 8 (Russian flag/ Slasha), 8 (Brazilian flag/Baloncici), 8 (Mexican flag/movit), 8 (Egyptian flag/ Tomasz Guzowski), 8 (Japanese flag/CAPTAINHOOK), 11 (video call/Mila Supinskaya Glashchenko), 11 (male teacher/Monkey Business Images), 15 (yellow umbrella/rtem), 15 (closed umbrellas/tale), 15 (wristwatch/lan 2010), 15 (two wristwatches/Pavel Mirchuk), 15 (personal organiser/Brian A Jackson), 15 (leather organisers/Robert Davies), 16 (American football player/Brocreative), 16 (New York taxis/Bufflerump), 16 (KFC food/fotorawin), 16 (fries/mubus7), 16 (Levis jeans/Thinglass), 16 (hot dog/Africa Studio), 17 (Lower Manhattan skyline/mandritoiu), 19 (no mobiles sign/nikolae), 19 (no photography sign/ darsi), 21 (Rockefeller building/Sean Pavone), 21 (Central Park/Gimas), 23 (scotch egg/Edward Westmacott), 23 (Kynance Cove/ian woolcock), 24 (day to night/ tcharts), 24 (office/Monkey Business Images), 25 (professions/g-stockstudio), 28 (croissant/Tanapat Phuengpak), 28 (coffee/Maxsol), 28 (chocolate brownie/ margouillat photo), 30 (bow tie/Olga Popova), 30 (wristwatch/Iablonskyi Mykola), 30 (handbag/Katrin Kot), 30 (glasses/STILLFX), 30 (ring/PhotoNAN), 31 (commuters/William Perugini), 32 (stethoscope/5 second studio), 33 (drums/ furtseff), 33 (clock/PaulPaladin), 33 (bookshelf/connel), 39 (electric guitar/ mekcar), 39 (camera/Tatiana Popova), 39 (trainers/Denis Rozhnovsky), 42 (London scene/vanessawoz), 44 (jeans/Nisakorn Neera), 44 (t-shirt/Olga Kovalenko), 44 (leather shoes/Lucy Liu), 44 (green jumper/Alexander Kalina), 44 (shirt/Karkas), 44 (skirt/istanbul_image_video), 44 (blazer jacket/Karkas), 44 (trousers/Karkas), 45 (t-shirt/Africa Studio), 45 (leather jacket/dora modlyparis), 45 (jeans/Early Spring), 49 (Summer beach vacation/David Franklin), 50 (accordion player/Goran Bogicevic), 50 (guitar player/Igor Stepovik), 50 (girl plays violin/astudio), 50 (guitar player/pikselstock), 50 (drum player/Africa Studio), 50 (keyboard player/IngoSStar), 50 (trumpet player/Mr Twister), 50 (saxophone player/Africa Studio), 56 (starfish/ZoranOrcik), 56 (hat/Rustle), 56 (Boeing 747/Chris Parypa Photography), 58 (woman by elevator/wowsty), 59 (music DJ/Vladimir Hodac), 62 (green wallpaper/Nadezhda Bolotina), 62 (open old book on white background/Jiri Hera), 63 (cork board texture/fluke samed), 63 (detective/Ysbrand Cosijn), 64 (Oil painting landscape/Fresh Stock), 66 (abstract figure/Joe Techapanupreeda), 66 (key/Bjoern Wylezich), 67 (bathroom/gifted), 67 (hotel hallway/Alexey Zaytsev), 70 (clipboard/Mega Pixel), 70 (sandwich/Vankad), 72 (valentine sweets/AN NGUYEN), 72 (tonic water/ PhotoTodos), 72 (Coca Cola/M. Unal Ozmen), 72 (egg/Evgeny Karandaev), 72 (apple/S-F), 72 (Walkers crisps/urbanbuzz), 72 (olive oil/valigloo), 72 (sliced bread/kwanchai.c), 72 (teaspoon/azure1), 72 (teaspoon and sugar/Juris Sturainis), 73 (salt flat/Sara Winter), 78 (New York station/Felix Lipov), 78 (church/Markus Gann), 78 (Vietnam street/View Apart), 79 (motorbikes, Vietnam/xuanhuongho), 80 (wood/Local Studio), 82 (beige background/Svetlana Dikhtyareva), 88 (jungle/ AustralianCamera), 89 (sky/Roman Sigaev), 91 (encyclopedia set/Filip Fuxa), 91 (fax machine/immfocus studio), 94 (Game of Thrones Season 7/HBO/Kobal/ REX), 94 (Jurassic Park 1993/Amblin/Universal/Kobal/REX), 94 (IT 2017/Brooke Palmer/Warner Bros/Kobal/REX); 101 (pizza/Stepanek Photography), 101 (male portrait/eurobanks), 101 (middle aged couple/goodluz), 101 (woman using laptop/Monkey Business Images), 101 (Japanese student/KPG_Payless), 101 (male portrait/Serenethos), 102 (female portrait/AJR_photo), 104 (baked beans/marco mayer), 104 (herbal tea/Davydenko Yuliia), 113 (stylish woman/A. and I. Kruk), 115 (fish and chips/DronG), 115 (leather boots/Devin_Pavel), 151 (laptop/ifong), 151 (desk lamp/BalancePhoto), 151 (notebook/Everything), 151 (diary/V_ctoria), 151 (family portrait/Monkey Business Images), 151 (smart phone/scyther5), 151 (satchel/BEAUTYofLIFE), 151 (blank paper/Garsya), 151 (headphones/Igor Lateci), 151 (iPad/Alexey Boldin), 153 (gardening/Kinga), 153 (busy student/ wavebreakmedia), 153 (book reading/arisara), 153 (teen listens to music/ leungchopan), 153 (vacuuming/Africa Studio), 153 (man piays guitar/Dean Drobot), 153 (girl eats vegetables/Oksana Kuzmina), 153 (treadmills/ wavebreakmedia), 153 (broken phone/Take Photo), 153 (man driving car/Sergey Novikov), 153 (student studying/Dragon Images), 154 (cleaners/lakov Filimonov), 154 (female employee/withGod), 154 (businessman/Andrey_Popov), 154 (male vet/SpeedKingz), 154 (saleswoman/racorn), 155 (elderly couple/Andresr), 155 (middle aged couple/racorn), 155 (senior couple/Isantilli), 155 (male portrait/ Phovoir), 155 (young couple/cate_89), 155 (male portrait/Raisa Kanareva), 155 (woman/goodluz), 155 (mixed race couple/Phovoir), 155 (young girl/Monkey Business Images), 155 (toddler/Elena Stepanova), 155 (smiling baby/pavla), 158 (tango dancing/Karelian), 158 (booking a taxi/Denys Prykhodov), 158 (buying a newspaper/l i g h t p o e t), 158 (girl swimming/Imagentle), 158 (man reading instructions/Monkey Business Images), 158 (aerial parking view/Chesky), 158 (girl receives flowers/VGstockstudio), 158 (friends drinking coffee/ wavebreakmedia), 158 (couple taking selfie/victorsaboya), 158 (Google search/), 158 (using smart phone/EpicStockMedia), 158 (marathon/David Acosta Allely), 158 (cinema audience/BlueSkyImage), 159 (four seasons vector/Pagina), 160 (walking in the park/Aleksandar Mijatovic), 160 (school pupils/Monkey Business Images), 160 (businessman/lipik), 160 (church crowd/Nando Machado), 160 (girl on bus/l i g h t p o e t), 160 (girl shopping/EpicStockMedia), 160 (blonde girl/photoff), 160 (teen friends/Andresr), 160 (teens dancing/Pressmaster), 160 (man drinking coke/Kues), 160 (man holding car keys/pikselstock), 160 (eating sandwich/pixelheadphoto digitalskillet), 160 (email menu/ kpatyhka), 160 (girl buttoning shirt/Borysevych.com), 160 (morning routine/ Pranee Chaiyadam), 160 (key and lock/Brian A Jackson), 164 (shopping mall/ estherpoon), 164 (animal zoo/Thitisan), 164 (Bodiam Castle/Tony Baggett), 164 (street view/littlesam), 164 (old square, Prague/MarinaDa), 164 (Eurostar station/TungCheung); Stefka Poessel p.88 (Stefka Poessel); Zoltán Kerényi-Kiss p.116 (Zoltán Kerényi-Kiss). Pronunciation chart artwork by: Ellis Nadler

Illustrations by: Victoria Antolini/Wolphins: p.46/7; Laura Barnard: pp.60, 80; Lisa Beta/Illustrationweb: pp.18,19; Paul Boston/Meiklejohn: pp.10, 103 (desks), 108 (desks), 150; Jan Bowman: pp.26, 27; Bill Brown/Illustrationdivision: pp.103 (scenes), 109 (scenes), 142, 143, 147, 156, 162; Peter Bull: pp.8 (maps), 60, 149; Stephen Conlin: pp.40/1, 105, 110, 131, 133, 134, 135, 138, 141; Hannah Davies/Illustration: p.82/83; Mark Duffin: p.67 (ghost in corridor); Rohan Eason/ Illustrationweb: p.161; Ivan Gillett/NB Illustration: pp.6, 7, 38, 39; Satoshi Hashimoto: p.140; Pauline Reeve/Bright: p.74; Joe Todd Stanton: p.45 (shirts); Anders Wenngren/Illustrationdivision: pp.18 (icons), 49 (icons), 68 (icons), 90, 97, 152; Paul Young/Artist Partners: p.67 (ghost in bathroom).

Commissioned photography by: Gareth Boden pp.64, 65; MM Studios pp.6, 7, 15, 24, 38, 69, 90, 151, 163.